

Collins

Webster's

PIONEERS IN DICTIONARY PUBLISHING

easy learning

ENGLISH

VOCABULARY

The easiest way to accurate
and effective English

Digital Edition

introduction

Collins Webster's Easy Learning English Vocabulary is designed for anyone who wants to broaden their knowledge of English words in key everyday situations. Whether you need English at work, at school or college, or for a vacation, *Collins Webster's Easy Learning English Vocabulary* offers you the information you require in a clear and accessible format.

This book is divided into 50 subject areas. These cover such topics as “air travel,” “business,” “food and drink,” and “science,” arranged in alphabetical order. This arrangement by subject area helps you to learn related words and phrases together. In this way, you can always be sure of using the right word in the right context.

Within each topic, vocabulary is divided into nouns, verbs, adjectives, adverbs, phrases, and idioms. Each word is defined in relation to the topic in question. For example, in “air travel,” the meaning that is given for the word *connection* is:

“a plane that leaves after another one arrives and allows you to continue your journey by changing from one to the other.”

In “computers and the internet,” on the other hand, *connection* is defined in terms of its computer-related sense:

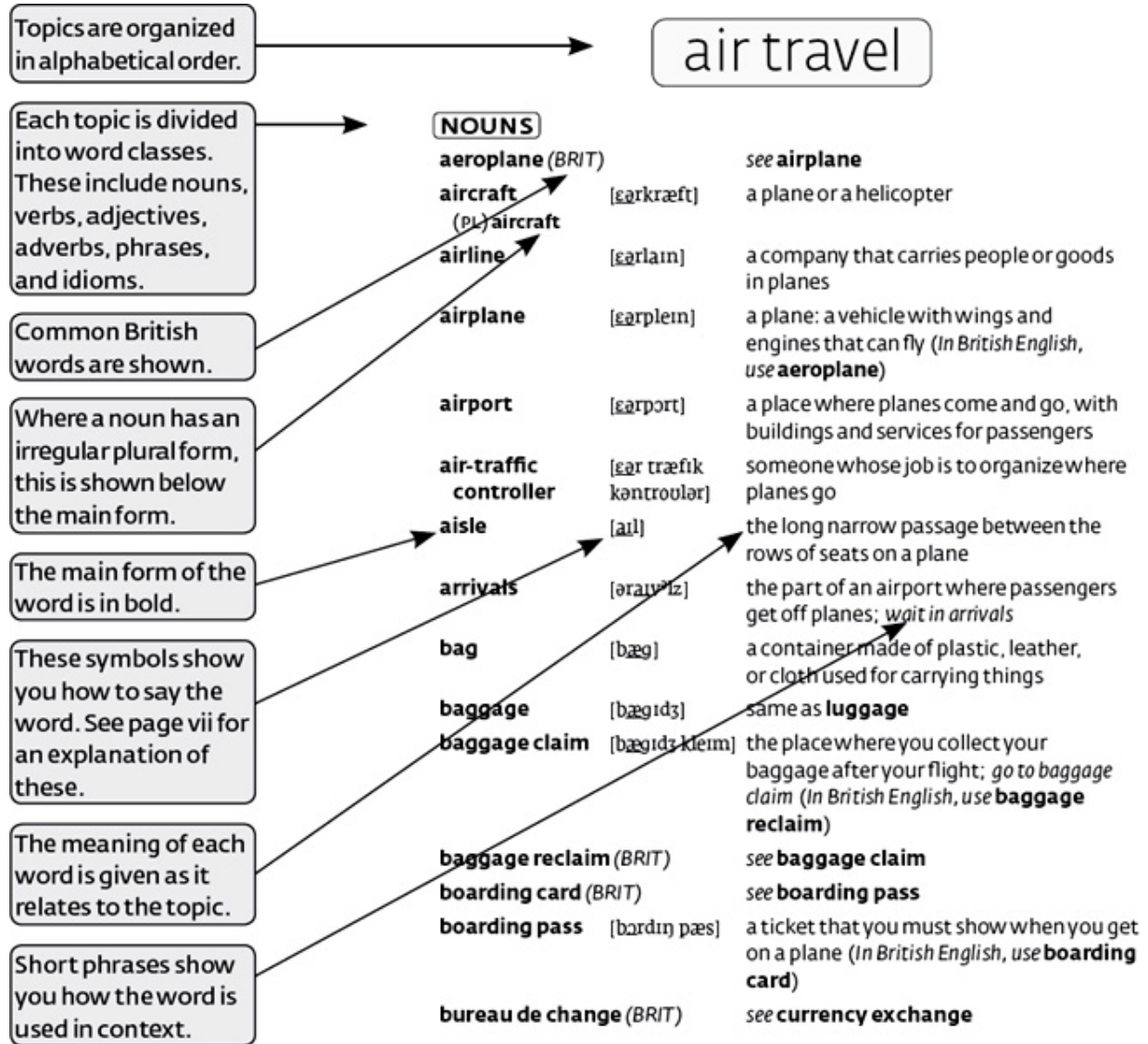
“a link between a computer and a network.”

For each topic, there are plenty of authentic example sentences from the Collins corpus. These show you how words and phrases are used in real English.

At the end of the book, there are additional sections on place names and people, numbers, measurements, times, and dates. There is also an alphabetical index, and a list of irregular verbs.

We hope that this book will help you to expand your knowledge of English vocabulary in a wide range of situations. For more information about Collins dictionaries, visit us at www.collinslanguage.com.

Guide to entries



Topics are organized in alphabetical order.

Each topic is divided into word classes. These include nouns, verbs, adjectives, adverbs, phrases, and idioms.

Common British words are shown.

Where a noun has an irregular plural form, this is shown below the main form.

The main form of the word is in bold.

These symbols show you how to say the word. See page vii for an explanation of these.

The meaning of each word is given as it relates to the topic.

Short phrases show you how the word is used in context.

Examples from the corpus show how words and phrases are used in real English.

EXAMPLES
Most low-cost airlines do not serve food.
We checked in early and walked around the airport.
Please do not leave bags in the aisle.
The police said the incident occurred last weekend in arrivals at Terminal 3.

Phrasal verbs and other verb phrases are shown at the end of each verb section.

check in		to tell the person at an airport desk that you have arrived
check something in		to give your luggage to the person at an airport desk; <i>check in luggage</i>
delay	[dɪleɪ]	to make something later than expected; <i>The flight is delayed.</i>
depart	[dɪpɑːrt]	to leave
fly	[flaɪ]	1 to travel somewhere in an aircraft 2 when a pilot flies a plane, they make it move through the air
hijack	[haɪdʒæk]	to illegally take control of a plane
land	[lənd]	1 when a plane lands, it comes down to the ground after moving through the air 2 when a pilot lands a plane, it comes down to the ground after moving through the air
search	[sɜːtʃ]	to look carefully in a place for something; <i>search someone's luggage</i>
take off		when an aircraft takes off, it leaves the ground and starts to fly

Where a word has more than one meaning that relates to the topic, each meaning is given.

pronunciation guide

IPA Symbols

Vowel	Sounds
ɑ	calm, ah
æ	act, mass
aɪ	dive, cry
aʊ	out, down
ɛ	met, lend, pen
eɪ	say, weight
ɪ	fit, win
i	feed, me
ɒ	lot, spot
oʊ	note, coat
ɔ	claw, more
ɔɪ	boy, joint
ʊ	could, stood
u	you, use

ʌ	fund, must
ə	the first vowel in about
i	second vowel in very
u	second vowel in actual

Notes

Stress is shown by a line below the stressed syllable. For example, in the word *accomplish*, /əkɒmplɪʃ/, the second syllable is stressed.

Consonant	Sounds
b	bed, rub
d	done, red
f	fit, if
g	good, dog
h	hat, horse
k	king, pick
l	lip, bill
əl	handle, panel
m	mat, ram
n	not, tin
ən	hidden, written

p	pay, lip
r	run, read
s	soon, bus
t	talk, bet
v	van, love
w	win, wool
x	loch
y	yellow, you
z	zoo, buzz
ʃ	ship, wish
ʒ	measure, leisure
ŋ	sing, working
tʃ	cheap, witch
θ	thin, myth
ð	then, bathe
dʒ	joy, bridge

air travel

NOUNS

aeroplane (BRIT)		see airplane
aircraft (PL) aircraft	[<u>æ</u> rkɹæft]	a plane or a helicopter
airline	[<u>æ</u> rlaɪn]	a company that carries people or goods in planes
airplane	[<u>æ</u> rpleɪn]	a plane: a vehicle with wings and engines that can fly (<i>In British English, use aeroplane</i>)
airport	[<u>æ</u> rpɔːrt]	a place where planes come and go, with buildings and services for passengers
air-traffic controller	[<u>æ</u> r træfɪk kəntroʊləɹ]	someone whose job is to organize where planes go
aisle	[<u>aɪ</u> l]	the long narrow passage between the rows of seats on a plane

arrivals	[əraɪvəlz]	the part of an airport where passengers get off planes; <i>wait in arrivals</i>
bag	[bæg]	a container made of plastic, leather, or cloth used for carrying things
baggage	[bæɡɪdʒ]	same as luggage
baggage claim	[bæɡɪdʒ kleɪm]	the place where you collect your baggage after your flight; <i>go to baggage claim (In British English, use baggage reclaim)</i>
baggage reclaim (BRIT)		<i>see baggage claim</i>
boarding card (BRIT)		<i>see boarding pass</i>
boarding pass	[bɔːrdɪŋ pæʃ]	a ticket that you must show when you get on a plane (<i>In British English, use boarding card</i>)
bureau de change (BRIT)		<i>see currency exchange</i>

EXAMPLES

Most low-cost airlines do not serve food.

We checked in early and walked around the airport.

Please do not leave bags in the aisle.

The police said the incident occurred last weekend in arrivals at Terminal 3.

business class	[ˈbɪznɪs klæs]	seats that are cheaper than first class but more expensive than economy class; <i>in business class</i>
cabin	[kæbɪn]	the part of a plane where people sit
cabin crew	[kæbɪn kruː]	the people whose job is to look after passengers on a plane; <i>The cabin crew were very nice.</i>
captain	[kæptɪn]	the person who is in charge of a plane
cargo hold	[kɑːrgəʊ hoʊld]	the place in a plane where goods or luggage are stored (<i>In British English, use hold</i>)
car hire (BRIT)		see car rental
car rental	[kɑːr rɛntəl]	paying money to borrow a car, for example when you are going on holiday (<i>In British English, use car hire</i>)

carry-on luggage	[kæri ɒn lʌɡɪdʒ]	the bags that you take with you in the cabin, rather than your checked bags; <i>lots of carry-on luggage (In British English, use hand luggage)</i>
checked luggage	[tʃɛkt lʌɡɪdʒ]	the bags that you have stored in the cargo hold of the aircraft, rather than your carry-on bags
check-in	[tʃɛk ɪn]	the desk that you go to in an airport to say that you have arrived; <i>Go to check-in at once.</i>
connection	[kənɛkʃən]	a plane that leaves after another one arrives and allows you to continue your journey by changing from one to the other

EXAMPLES

We had seats in business class on the flight from London to Los Angeles.

Ask cabin crew or see leaflet for details.

This piece of luggage will have to go in the cargo hold.

The price includes flights, car rental, and accommodation.

How many pieces of carry-on luggage can I take on the plane?

The airline will transport a bicycle for free if it's counted as one of your pieces of checked luggage.

We got to the airport and went straight to check-in.

My flight was late and I missed my connection.

customs	[kʌstəmz]	the place at an airport where you have to show certain goods that you have bought in another country, and, if necessary, pay tax on them
customs duty	[kʌstəmz dʊti]	tax that you pay when bringing certain goods into a country from another country
currency exchange	[kʌrənsi ɪksʃeɪndʒ]	an office where you can buy and sell different currencies (<i>In British English, use bureau de change</i>)
departures	[dɪpɑːrtʃəz]	the part of an airport where you wait before you get on a plane; <i>He was standing in departures.</i>
duration	[dʊərəɪʃən]	the length of time that something lasts
economy class	[ɪkɒnəmi klæs]	the cheapest seats on a plane; <i>in economy (class)</i>
emergency exit	[ɪmɜːdʒənsi ɛgzɪt, ɛksɪt]	a place where you leave a plane if there is an emergency, such as a crash or a fire
entrance	[ɛntrəns]	the door or gate where you go

		into a place
escalator	[ɛskəleɪtər]	a set of moving stairs
e-ticket	[i tɪkɪt]	short for “electronic ticket”: a ticket that is stored on a computer rather than on paper
exit	[ɛgzɪt, ɛksɪt]	the door that you use to leave a public building
fare	[fɛər]	the money that you pay for a journey in a plane
first class	[fɜrst klæs]	the best and most expensive seats on a plane; <i>in first class</i>
flight	[flaɪt]	a trip in an aircraft

EXAMPLES

We walked through customs.

You must pay customs duty on these goods.

Please go to departures.

You must keep your mobile phone switched off for the duration of the flight.

Margarita sat in economy class on the flight to Bucharest.

Take the escalator to the second floor.

Our flight was delayed by three hours because of fog.

There were no direct flights to San Francisco, so we had to change planes in Chicago.

flight [flaɪt ətɛndənt] a person whose job it is to look

attendant		after passengers on a plane and to give them food and drink
flight number	[flaɪt nʌmbər]	the unique number that is given to each flight
gate	[geɪt]	a place where you leave an airport and get on a plane
hand luggage (BRIT)		see carry-on luggage
helicopter	[hɛlɪkɒptər]	an aircraft with long blades on top that go around very fast
hold (BRIT)		see cargo hold
ID card	[aɪ dɪ kɑːd]	a card with your name, date of birth, and photograph on it that shows who you are
information desk	[ɪnfərmeɪʃən dɛsk]	a place where you can ask for information about your flight
jet lag	[dʒɛt læg]	the feeling of being very tired when you fly between two places where the time is different; <i>suffering from jet lag</i>
jumbo jet	[dʒʌmbou dʒɛt]	a large plane that can carry several hundred passengers

landing	[lændɪŋ]	the act of bringing a plane back down on to the ground; <i>a smooth landing; a bumpy landing</i>
layover	[leɪoʊvər]	a short stay in a place between parts of a journey (<i>In British English, use stopover</i>)
luggage	[lʌɡɪdʒ]	the bags that you take with you when you travel; <i>lots of luggage</i>
luggage label	[lʌɡɪdʒ leɪbəl]	a piece of plastic with your name, address, and phone number that you attach to your luggage in case it gets lost

EXAMPLES

I asked the flight attendant for a glass of water.

He is on flight number 776 from Beijing.

I had terrible jet lag for three days after my vacation.

We made a layover in Bangkok to break up the journey between London and Brisbane.

How many pieces of luggage are you checking in?

Why does Ingrid need so much luggage for a short stay?

parachute	[pærəʃʊt]	a large piece of thin material that a person attaches to their body when they jump from an
------------------	-----------	--

		aircraft to help them float safely to the ground
passenger	[pæsiɪdʒər]	a person who is traveling in a plane, but who is not flying it or working on it
passport	[pæspɔ:t]	an official document that you have to show when you enter or leave a country
pilot	[paɪlət]	a person who controls an aircraft
plane	[pleɪn]	a vehicle with wings and engines that can fly
plane crash	[pleɪn kræʃ]	an accident in which a plane hits another plane or hits the ground
propeller	[prəpələ]	a part of an aircraft that turns around very fast and makes the aircraft move
reservation	[rezə'veɪʃən]	a seat on a flight that an airline keeps ready for you
runway	[rʌnweɪ]	a long road that a plane travels on before it starts flying

seat	[s <u>i</u> t]	something that you can sit on
seat belt	[s <u>i</u> t belt]	a long belt that you fasten around your body to keep you safe when you are on a plane
security	[s <u>i</u> ky <u>u</u> ər <u>i</u> ti]	1 everything that is done to protect a place; <i>Security has been increased.</i> 2 the place in an airport where your bags are checked; go <i>through security</i>
stopover (BRIT)		see layover
suitcase	[s <u>u</u> tk <u>e</u> ɪs]	a case for carrying your clothes when you are traveling
take-off	[t <u>e</u> ɪk ɔf]	the beginning of a flight, when a plane leaves the ground; a <i>smooth take-off</i>

EXAMPLES

Could I see your passport and boarding pass, please?

You are in seat 35C.

Please fasten your seat belts during take-off and landing.

World leaders have announced plans to tighten up airline security.

What time is take-off?

terminal	[tɜːrmɪnəl]	a place where people begin or end a flight
ticket	[tɪkɪt]	a small piece of paper that shows that you have paid for a flight
timetable	[taɪmteɪbəl]	a list of the times when planes arrive and depart
tourist	[tuəɪst]	a person who is visiting a place on vacation
travel agency	[trævəl eɪdʒənsi]	a business that sells vacations
traveler	[trævələr]	1 a person who is on a trip 2 a person who travels a lot (<i>In British English, use traveller</i>)
traveller (BRIT)		see traveler
tray table	[treɪ teɪbəl]	a small table that is attached to the back of the seat in front of you on a plane
trip	[trɪp]	a journey that you make to a particular place and back again
trolley	[trɒli]	a large container with wheels

that you use at an airport for moving heavy luggage

window [wɪndəʊ]

a space in the side of a plane that you can see through

wing [wɪŋ]

one of the long flat parts at the side of a plane that support it while it is flying

VERBS

board [bɔːrd]

to get into a plane to travel somewhere

book [bʊk]

to arrange and pay for a flight;
book a ticket; book a flight

cancel [kænsəl]

to say that something that has been planned will not happen;
cancel a flight

EXAMPLES

We left the airport terminal and looked for the taxi rank.

Terminal 1 will handle Air Canada's domestic flights.

I'm taking a short trip to France.

I pushed my luggage trolley toward the "Nothing to Declare" sign.

Can I have a window seat, please?

I boarded the plane to Dubai.

British Airways canceled several flights because of the bad weather.

check in		to tell the person at an airport desk that you have arrived
check something in		to give your luggage to the person at an airport desk; <i>check in luggage</i>
delay	[dɪleɪ]	to make something later than expected; <i>The flight is delayed.</i>
depart	[dɪpɑːt]	to leave
fly	[flaɪ]	1 to travel somewhere in an aircraft 2 when a pilot flies a plane, they make it move through the air
hijack	[haɪdʒæk]	to illegally take control of a plane
land	[lænd]	1 when a plane lands, it comes down to the ground after moving through the air 2 when a pilot lands a plane, it comes down to the ground after moving through the air
search	[sɜːtʃ]	to look carefully in a place for

something; *search someone's luggage*

take off

when an aircraft takes off, it leaves the ground and starts to fly

ADJECTIVES

airsick

[ɛərsɪk]

feeling sick during a flight because of the movement of the plane

direct

[dɪrɛkt, daɪ-]

used to describe a flight that goes from one place to another without stopping

domestic

[dəmɜstɪk]

used to describe flights between airports in the same country

duty-free

[dutɪfrɪ]

duty-free goods are sold at airports or on planes at a cheaper price than usual because they are not taxed; *duty-free perfume*

EXAMPLES

Flight BA201 will depart from gate 21 in 30 minutes.

We are flying over London.

the animal world

NOUNS

ANIMALS

animal	[<u>æ</u> nɪməl]	1 a creature such as a dog or a cat, but not a bird, fish, insect, or human 2 any living creature, including a human
ant	[<u>æ</u> nt]	a small crawling insect that lives in large groups
bat	[<u>bæ</u> t]	a small animal, like a mouse with wings, that sleeps upside down during the day and comes out to fly at night
bear	[<u>bɛ</u> ər]	a large, strong wild animal with thick fur and sharp claws
bee	[<u>b</u> i]	a yellow and black striped flying insect that makes a sweet food (called honey) and can sting you
bird	[<u>bɜ</u> rd]	an animal with feathers and

		wings
bull	[bʊl]	1 a male animal of the cow family 2 a male animal of some other animal families, such as elephants and whales
butterfly	[bʌtərflaɪ]	an insect with large colored wings
calf (PL) calves	[kæf] [kævz]	a young cow
camel	[kæmə]	an animal with one or two large lumps on its back
cat	[kæt]	a small animal covered with fur, that people in some countries keep as a pet
caterpillar	[kætəpɪlər]	a small animal with a long body, that develops into a butterfly
cockroach	[kɒkroutʃ]	a large brown insect that likes to live in places where food is kept
cod	[kɒd]	a large fish with white flesh
cow	[kaʊ]	a large female animal that is kept on farms for its milk

crab	[kræb]	a sea animal with a shell and ten legs. Crabs usually move sideways.
crocodile	[krɒkədail]	a large animal with a long body, a long mouth, and sharp teeth. Crocodiles live in rivers in hot countries.
deer (PL) deer	[diə]	a large wild animal that eats grass and leaves. Male deer usually have antlers (= large horns that look like branches).
dog	[dɒg]	an animal that people in some countries keep as a pet, or use to guard buildings
donkey	[dɒŋki]	an animal like a small horse with long ears
duck	[dʌk]	a bird that lives near water
eagle	[iɡə]	a large bird that eats small animals
eel	[i:l]	a long, thin fish that looks like a snake
elephant	[ɛlɪfənt]	a very large grey animal with a long nose called a trunk

fish (PL) fish	[fɪʃ]	an animal that lives and swims in water, that people eat as food
fly	[flaɪ]	a small insect with two wings
fox	[fɒks]	a wild animal that looks like a dog, and has red fur and a thick tail
frog	[frɒg]	a small animal with smooth skin, big eyes, and long back legs that it uses for jumping. Frogs live in or near water.
giraffe	[dʒɪræf]	a large African animal with a very long neck, long legs, and dark spots on its body
goat	[ɡoʊt]	an animal that has horns, and hairs on its chin that look like a beard
goose (PL)	[ɡuːs]	a large bird like a duck with a long neck
geese	[giːz]	
grasshopper	[græʃhɒpər]	an insect that jumps high into the air and makes a sound with its long back legs
hedgehog	[hedʒhɒg]	a small brown animal with sharp points covering its back

hen [hɛn] a female chicken

EXAMPLE

Where did you catch the fish?

hippopotamus [hɪpəpɒtəməs] a very large animal with short
(PL) legs and thick skin, that lives

hippopotamuses, [hɪpəpɒtəmaɪ] in and near rivers

hippopotami

horse [hɔrs] a large animal that people can
ride

insect [ɪnsɛkt] a very small animal that has
six legs. Most insects have
wings.

jellyfish(PL) [dʒɛlɪfɪʃ] a sea animal that has a clear
jellyfish soft body and that can sting
you

kangaroo [kæŋgəru] a large Australian animal. A
female kangaroo carries her
baby in a pocket (called a
pouch) on her stomach.

kitten [kɪtən] a very young cat

ladybird	[leɪdɪbɜːrd]	a small round insect that is red or yellow with black spots
lamb	[læm]	a young sheep
lion	[laɪən]	a large wild cat that lives in Africa. Lions have yellow fur, and male lions have manes (= long hair on their head and neck).
lizard	[lɪzəd]	a small animal with a long tail and rough skin
lobster	[lɒbstər]	a sea animal that has a hard shell and eight legs
mammal	[mæməl]	an animal that feeds its babies with milk
mole	[moʊl]	a small animal with black fur, that lives under the ground
monkey	[mʌŋki]	an animal that has a long tail and can climb trees
mosquito	[məskɪtəʊ]	a small flying insect that bites people and animals
moth	[mɒθ]	an insect that has large wings and is attracted by lights at

		night
mouse (PL) mice	[maʊs] [maɪs]	a small animal with a long tail
octopus (PL) octopuses, octopi	[ɒktəpəs] [ɒktəpəs]	a soft sea animal with eight long arms
ostrich	[ɒstrɪtʃ]	a very large bird that cannot fly
owl	[aʊl]	a bird with large eyes that is active at night
oyster	[ɔɪstər]	a large flat shellfish that people often eat raw
panda	[pændə]	a large animal from China with black and white fur
parrot	[pærət]	a tropical bird with a curved beak and very bright feathers
penguin	[pɛŋgwɪn]	a black and white bird that lives in very cold places, that can swim but cannot fly
pet	[pɛt]	an animal that you keep in your home
pig	[pɪg]	a farm animal with a fat body

		and short legs, that is kept for its meat
pony	[p <u>o</u> ni]	a small or young horse
puppy	[p <u>ʌ</u> pi]	a young dog
rabbit	[r <u>æ</u> bit]	a small animal that has long ears and lives in a hole in the ground
rat	[r <u>æ</u> t]	an animal that has a long tail and looks like a large mouse
rhinoceros (PL)	[raɪn <u>ɔ</u> sərəs]	a large animal from Asia or Africa with a horn on its nose
rhinoceroses, rhinoceros, rhinoceri	[raɪn <u>ɔ</u> sərəs]	
salmon (PL)	[s <u>æ</u> mən]	a large fish with silver skin and pink flesh
salmon		
seagull	[si <u>g</u> əl]	a common type of bird with white or grey feathers, that lives near the sea
seal	[si <u>l</u>]	a large animal with a rounded body and short fur, that eats fish and lives near the sea
shark	[ʃ <u>ɑ</u> rk]	a very large fish that often has

very sharp teeth and may
attack people

shellfish (PL) [ʃɛlfɪʃ]
shellfish

a small sea creature with a
shell

EXAMPLES

We don't have any pets.

snail [sneɪl]

a small animal with a long soft
body, no legs, and a round shell
on its back

snake [sneɪk]

a long, thin animal with no legs,
that slides along the ground

species (PL) [spiːʃiːz]
species

a related group of plants or
animals; *a species of fish; an
endangered species*

spider [spaɪdər]

a small animal with eight legs

squid [skwɪd]

a sea animal that has a long soft
body and many soft arms (called
tentacles)

squirrel [skwɜːrəl]

a small animal with a long thick
tail, that lives mainly in trees

stag (PL) stag, stags	[stæg]	an adult male deer
swan	[swɒn]	a large white bird with a very long neck, that lives on rivers and lakes
tadpole	[tædpəʊl]	a small water animal that looks like a black fish, and that develops into a frog or a toad
tiger	[taɪgər]	a large wild animal of the cat family. Tigers are orange with black stripes.
toad	[təʊd]	a small brown or green animal with long legs, that lives in water
tortoise	[tɔːtɔɪs]	an animal with a shell on its back, that moves very slowly
turkey	[tɜːki]	a large bird that is kept on a farm for its meat
wasp	[wɒsp]	an insect with wings, and yellow and black stripes across its body. Wasps can sting people.
whale	[weɪl]	a very large mammal that lives in the sea

wolf (PL)	[wʊlf]	a wild animal that looks like a
wolves	[wʊlvz]	large dog
worm	[wɜrm]	a small animal with a long, thin
		body, no bones and no legs
zebra	[zɪbrə]	a wild horse with black and
		white stripes, that lives in Africa

PARTS OF ANIMALS

antenna	[æntɛnə]	one of the two long, thin parts
(PL) antennae,		attached to the head of an
antennas	[æntɛnaɪ]	insect, that it uses to feel things
		with
antler	[æntlər]	one of the two horns that are
		shaped like branches on the
		head of a male deer
beak	[bɪk]	the hard, pointed part of a bird's
		mouth
claw	[klɔ]	the thin, hard, pointed part at
		the end of the foot of a bird or
		an animal
coat	[kəʊt]	an animal's fur or hair
feather	[fɛðər]	one of the light soft things that
		cover a bird's body

fur	[fɜr]	the thick hair that grows on the bodies of many animals
hair	[hɛər]	the short threads that grow on the bodies of many animals
hoof (PL)	[hʊf, hʊf]	one of the hard parts of the feet of horses, cows and some other animals
hooves	[hʊvz, hʊvz]	
horn	[hɔrn]	one of the hard pointed things that grow from an animal's head
mane	[meɪn]	the long, thick hair that grows from the neck of some animals
paw	[pɔ]	the foot of an animal such as a cat, a dog, or a bear
shell	[ʃɛl]	the hard part that covers the back of an animal such as a snail or a tortoise, and protects it
snout	[snaʊt]	the long nose of an animal such as a pig
tail	[teɪl]	the long thin part at the end of an animal's body
trunk	[trʌŋk]	the long nose of an elephant

EXAMPLES

Cat hair makes me sneeze.

He heard the sound of horses' hooves behind him.

The kitten was black, with white paws.

tusk	[tʌsk]	a very long, curved, pointed tooth that grows beside the mouth of an elephant
wing	[wɪŋ]	one of the two parts of the body of a bird or an insect, that it uses for flying

PLACES WHERE ANIMALS ARE FOUND

aquarium	[əkwɛəriəm]	1 a building where fish and sea animals are kept and people can go to look at them 2 a glass box filled with water, in which people keep fish as pets
cage	[keɪdʒ]	a structure made of metal bars where you keep birds or animals
field	[fi:ld]	a piece of land where animals are kept

kennel	[kɛnəl]	a small house for a dog
nest	[nɛst]	the place where a bird, a small animal, or an insect keeps its eggs or its babies; <i>build a nest</i>
web	[wɛb]	the thin net that a spider makes in order to catch insects
zoo	[zu]	a park where animals are kept and people can go to look at them

OTHER ANIMAL NOUNS

bite	[baɪt]	a painful mark on your body where an animal, a snake, or an insect has bitten you
collar	[kɒlər]	a band of leather or plastic that you can put around the neck of a dog or a cat
egg	[ɛg]	a round object that contains a baby bird, insect, snake, or fish; <i>lay an egg</i>
sting	[stɪŋ]	a painful mark on your body where an insect has stung you
trap	[træp]	a piece of equipment for

catching animals

EXAMPLES

A canary was singing in a cage.

How do you treat a wasp sting?

The rabbit was caught in a trap.

VERBS

NOISES ANIMALS MAKE

baa	[bɑ]	when a sheep baas, it makes its typical sound
bark	[bɑrk]	when a dog barks, it makes its typical short, loud sound
buzz	[bʌz]	when a bee or another insect buzzes, it makes its typical rough continuous sound
growl	[graʊl]	when a dog or another animal growls, it makes a low sound in its throat, usually because it is angry
hiss	[hɪs]	when an animal such as a snake or a cat hisses, it makes a sound like a long “s”

meow	[mi <u>ə</u> ʊ]	when a cat meows, it makes its typical sound (<i>In British English, use miaow</i>)
miaow (BRIT)		see meow
moo	[m <u>u</u>]	when a cow moos, it makes its typical long, low sound
neigh	[n <u>eɪ</u>]	when a horse neighs, it makes its typical loud sound
purr	[p <u>ɜː</u> r]	when a cat purrs, it makes a low sound with its throat because it is happy
quack	[kw <u>æ</u> k]	when a duck quacks, it makes its typical sound
roar	[r <u>ɔː</u> r]	when a lion roars, it makes its typical loud sound
snort	[sn <u>ɔː</u> rt]	when an animal snorts, it breathes air noisily out through its nose

WAYS IN WHICH ANIMALS MOVE

crawl	[kr <u>ɔː</u> l]	when an insect or animal crawls somewhere, it moves there very slowly
--------------	------------------	---

EXAMPLES

Our dog always barks at the postman.

Bees buzzed in the flowers.

The cat sat on the sofa, purring happily.

fly	[flaɪ]	when a bird or an insect flies, it moves through the air
gallop	[gæləp]	when a horse gallops, it runs very fast so that all four legs are off the ground at the same time
hop	[hɒp]	when a bird or an animal hops, it moves by jumping on both of its feet or all four of its feet together
roam	[roum]	when an animal roams, it moves freely around an area
slither	[slɪðər]	when a snake slithers, it moves along the ground, sliding from side to side
swim	[swɪm]	when a fish swims, it moves through water
trot	[trɒt]	when an animal such as a horse

trots, it moves fairly fast, taking quick small steps

wag [wæɡ]

when a dog wags its tail, it moves it from side to side

OTHER ANIMAL VERBS

bite [baɪt]

if a snake or an insect bites you, it makes a mark or a hole in your skin with a sharp part of its body

feed [fiːd]

1 when you feed an animal, you give it food to eat
2 when an animal feeds, it eats or drinks something

graze [ɡreɪz]

when an animal grazes, it eats the grass or other plants that are growing in a particular place

hibernate [haɪbərneɪt]

when an animal hibernates, it spends the winter in a state like a deep sleep

hunt [hʌnt]

to chase and kill wild animals for food or as a sport

EXAMPLES

The bird flew away as I came near.

The horse trotted around the field.

sting	[stɪŋ]	if an insect stings you, a pointed part of it is pushed into your skin so that you feel a sharp pain
--------------	--------	--

ADJECTIVES

stray	[streɪ]	far away from home, or not having a home; <i>a stray dog</i>
tame	[teɪm]	not afraid of humans
wild	[waɪld]	living in nature, and not taken care of by people; <i>a wild animal</i>

EXAMPLES

The deer never became tame; they ran away if you went near them.

art and photography

NOUNS

art	[ɑrt]	1 pictures or objects that are created for people to look at; <i>an art gallery</i> 2 the activity of creating pictures or objects for people to look at; <i>an art class</i>
art gallery	[ɑrt gæləri]	a place where people go to look at art
artist	[ɑrtɪst]	someone who draws, paints, or creates works of art
background	[bækgraʊnd]	the part of a picture that is behind the main things or people in it
brush	[brʌʃ]	an object with a lot of bristles or hairs attached to it, that you use for painting
camera	[kæmrə]	a piece of equipment for taking photographs or making films

canvas	[kænvəʃ]	a piece of strong, heavy material that you paint on
clay	[kleɪ]	a type of earth that is used for making things such as pots and bricks; <i>a clay pot</i>
collage	[kəlɑːʒ]	a picture that you make by sticking pieces of paper or cloth on a surface
design	[dɪzʌɪn]	<p>1 the process of planning and drawing things; <i>studying design</i></p> <p>2 a drawing that shows how something should be built or made; <i>drawing a design</i></p> <p>3 a pattern of lines or shapes that is used for decorating something; <i>a floral design</i></p>
designer	[dɪzʌɪnər]	a person whose job is to design things; <i>a fashion designer</i>
digital camera	[dɪdʒɪtəl kæmrə]	a camera that produces digital pictures that can be stored on a computer
easel	[iːzəl]	a stand that supports a picture while an artist is working on it

EXAMPLES

He studied art and design.

I looked at the man in the background of the photograph.

My brother has a talent for design.

The tablecloths come in three different designs.

exhibition	[ɛksɪbɪʃən]	a public event where you can see art or interesting objects
foreground	[fɔːrgraʊnd]	the part of a picture that seems nearest to you
frame	[freɪm]	the wood, metal, or plastic border around a picture or photograph
graphics	[græfɪks]	drawings, pictures, or symbols, especially when they are produced by a computer
illustration	[ɪləstreɪʃən]	a picture, design, or diagram in a book
landscape	[lændskeɪp]	a painting that shows a scene in the countryside
logo	[ləʊɡoʊ]	a special design that an organization puts on all its products; <i>a corporate logo</i>

oil paint	[ɔɪ peɪnt]	a thick paint that artists use
oil painting	[ɔɪ peɪntɪŋ]	a picture that has been painted using oil paints
paint	[peɪnt]	a colored liquid that you put onto a surface with a brush
painter	[peɪntər]	an artist who paints pictures
painting	[peɪntɪŋ]	1 a picture that someone has painted; <i>a famous painting</i> 2 the activity of painting pictures; <i>I enjoy painting.</i>
pattern	[pætərn]	an arrangement of lines or shapes that form a design
photograph	[fəʊtəgræf]	a picture that you take with a camera; <i>take a photograph</i>
photographer	[fəʊtəgrəfər]	someone who takes photographs
photography	[fəʊtəgrəfi]	the skill or process of producing photographs

EXAMPLES

The game's graphics are very good, so you can see things clearly.

He is very good at painting flowers.

The carpet had a pattern of light and dark stripes.

picture	[pɪktʃər]	1 a drawing or painting; <i>paint a picture</i> 2 a photograph; <i>take a picture</i>
portrait	[pɔːtrɪt, -treɪt]	a painting, drawing, or photograph of a particular person
poster	[pəʊstər]	a large picture that you stick on a wall
pottery	[pɒtəri]	the activity of making pots, dishes, and other objects from clay; <i>pottery classes</i>
primary color	[praɪməri kʌlər, -məri]	one of the three colors (red, yellow, and blue) that you can mix together to produce other colors (<i>In British English, use primary colour</i>)
primary colour (BRIT)		see primary color
sculptor	[skʌlptər]	an artist who makes works of art out of stone, metal, or wood
sculpture	[skʌlptʃər]	1 a piece of art that is made into a shape from a material like stone or wood

		2 the art of creating sculptures from materials like stone or wood
sketch	[skɛtʃ]	a drawing that you do quickly, without a lot of details
statue	[stætʃu]	a large model of a person or an animal, made of stone or metal
still life	[stɪl laɪf]	1 a painting or drawing of an arrangement of objects such as flowers or fruit 2 the type of painting or drawing that shows an arrangement of objects such as flowers or fruit
watercolor	[wɔtərˈkɒlər]	1 a coloured paint that is mixed with water and used for painting pictures 2 a picture that has been painted with watercolors (<i>In British English, use watercolour</i>)
watercolour (BRIT)		see watercolor

EXAMPLES

She drew a picture with a piece of colored chalk.

Paul did a quick sketch in pencil.

VERBS

design	[dɪz <u>ɪ</u> n]	to make a detailed plan or drawing that shows how something should be made
draw	[dr <u>ɔ</u>]	to use a pencil or a pen to make a picture
frame	[fr <u>eɪ</u> m]	to put a picture or photograph in a frame; <i>a framed photograph</i>
paint	[p <u>eɪ</u> nt]	to produce a picture using paint
sketch	[sk <u>ɛ</u> tʃ]	to make a quick drawing, without a lot of details

EXAMPLES

Monet painted hundreds of pictures of water lilies.

bikes

NOUNS

back light

(BRIT)

see **tail light**

bell

[bɛl]

a metal object on a bicycle that makes a ringing sound

bicycle

[baɪsɪkəl]

a vehicle with two wheels that you ride by sitting on it and using your legs to make the wheels turn

bike

[baɪk]

1 a bicycle

2 a motorcycle

bike lane

[baɪk leɪn]

a section of a road that is marked for cyclists to use; *stay in the bike lane (In British English, use cycle lane)*

bike path

[baɪk pæθ]

a special path that cyclists can use separately from cars and other vehicles; *ride on the bike*

*path (In British English, use **cycle path**)*

brake	[breɪk]	the part of a bicycle that makes it go more slowly or stop; <i>put the brakes on</i>
chain	[tʃeɪn]	a line of connected metal rings that turn the wheels of a bicycle
crossbar	[krɒsbɑː]	the horizontal bar between the handlebars and the saddle of a bicycle
cycle lane (BRIT)		see bike lane
cycle path (BRIT)		see bike path
cycling	[saɪklɪŋ]	the activity of riding a bicycle
cyclist	[saɪklist]	someone who rides a bicycle
fall	[fɔːl]	an occasion when you move quickly to the ground by accident; <i>have a bad fall</i>
fender	[fɛndər]	a curved piece of metal or plastic above a bicycle wheel

that protects the cyclist from dirt or water *see* [mudguard](#)

EXAMPLES

“How did you get there?” – “I went by bike.”

“How did you get here?” – “I came by bike.”

We rode along the bike path through the forest.

flat	[flæt]	a small leak in a tire that has been made by a sharp object; <i>have a flat; fix a flat (In British English, use puncture)</i>
flat tire	[flæt taɪər]	a tire that has no air in it (<i>In British English, use flat tyre</i>)
flat tire repair kit	[flæt taɪər rɪpɛər kɪt]	the tools and materials you need to repair a flat tire (<i>In British English, use puncture repair kit</i>)
flat tyre (BRIT)		<i>see</i> flat tire
frame	[freɪm]	the metal part of a bicycle between the wheels, handlebars, and saddle
front light		<i>see</i> head light

(BRIT)

gears	[gɪəz]	the system of wheels with teeth that are driven by a chain on a bicycle, making it easier or more difficult to pedal
handlebars	[hændəlbəz]	a curved metal bar with handles at each end that you use to steer a bicycle
head light	[hɛd laɪt]	a white light on the front of a bicycle (<i>In British English, use front light</i>)
helmet	[hɛlmɪt]	a hat made of a hard material, that you wear to protect your head
hub	[hʌb]	the center of a wheel
inner tube	[ɪnər tub]	a rubber tube containing air that is inside a tire; <i>a spare inner tube</i>
motorcycle	[məʊtərsaɪkəl]	a large heavy bicycle with an engine
mountain bike	[maʊntən baɪk]	a type of bicycle with a strong frame and thick tires
mudguard	[mʌdgɑːd]	a curved piece of metal or

plastic above a bicycle wheel that protects the cyclist from dirt or water *see* **fender**

padlock [pædlɒk] a metal lock that you use for fastening two things together

EXAMPLES

On hills, you use low gears.

Cyclists should always wear helmets.

pedal [pɛdəl] one of the two parts that you push with your feet to make a bicycle move

pump [pʌmp] a machine that you use to fill a tire with air; *a bicycle pump*

puncture
(BRIT) *see* **flat**

**puncture
repair kit**
(BRIT) *see* **flat tire repair kit**

reflector [rɪflɛktər] a small piece of special plastic on the front or back of a bicycle

		that becomes bright when light shines on it
ride	[raɪd]	a journey on a bicycle; <i>go for a ride</i>
saddle	[sædəl]	a seat on a bicycle or a motorcycle
speed	[spi:d]	1 how fast something moves or is done; <i>increase/decrease your speed</i> 2 very fast movement or travel; <i>travel at speed</i>
spoke	[spəʊk]	a bar that connects the outer ring of a wheel to the center
tail light	[teɪl laɪt]	a red light on the back of a bicycle (<i>In British English, use back light</i>)
tire	[taɪər]	a thick round piece of rubber that fits around the wheels of bicycles (<i>In British English, use tyre</i>)
tyre (BRIT)		see tire
valve	[vælv]	the part of a bicycle pump that controls the flow of air

wheel [wi:l] one of the two large round objects on a bicycle that allow it to move along the ground

VERBS

bike [baɪk] to ride a bicycle (*In British English, use **cycle***)

EXAMPLES

My bike's got a flat tire.

I need a new front/back wheel.

Every day he biked to work.

brake change gear [breɪk] to make a vehicle go more slowly or stop to make the chain of a bicycle move to another gear wheel; *change into first gear*

cycle (BRIT) see **bike**

pedal [pɛdəl] to push the pedals of a bicycle around with your feet to make it move; *pedal faster/more slowly*

pump up a tire to fill a tire with air (*In British English, use **pump up a tyre***)

**pump up a
tyre (BRIT)**

see **pump up a tire**

ride [raɪd]

to sit on a bicycle, control it,
and travel on it

signal [sɪgnəl]

to make a movement that tells
other people which way you
intend to go; *to signal right/left*

stop [stɒp]

to slow down and no longer
move

ADJECTIVES

rusty [rʌsti]

covered with rust (= a red-
brown substance that can form
on metal when it gets wet)

shiny [ʃaɪni]

bright and reflecting light

EXAMPLES

Belinda braked suddenly.

When you ride a bike, you exercise all your leg muscles.

boats, water, and the coast

NOUNS

anchor	[ˈæŋkər]	a heavy object that you drop into the water from a boat to stop it moving away
bank	[bæŋk]	a raised area of ground along the edge of a river
bay	[beɪ]	a part of a coast where the land goes in and forms a curve
beach	[bi:tʃ]	an area of sand or stones next to a lake or the sea; <i>at the beach</i>
boat	[bəʊt]	a vehicle that people use to travel on water; <i>a fishing boat; a rowing boat; a sailing boat; a motor boat</i>
bridge	[brɪdʒ]	a structure that is built over a river so that people or vehicles can cross from one side to the other
cabin	[kæbɪn]	a small room on a boat

canal	[kənæ̩l]	a long narrow river made by people for boats to travel along
canoe	[kənu̩]	a small, narrow boat that you move through the water using a paddle
captain	[kæptɪn]	the person who is in charge of a ship
cargo	[kɑrgoʊ]	the things that a ship is carrying
cliff	[klɪf]	a high area of land with a very steep side next to the sea
coast	[koʊst]	the land that is next to the sea or ocean
cruise	[kruːz]	a holiday that you spend on a ship
current	[kɜrənt]	a steady flow of water; <i>a strong current</i>

EXAMPLES

The bay is surrounded by steep cliffs.

We walked along the beach.

We went there by boat.

The ship was carrying a cargo of bananas.

We drove along the coast.

James and his wife went on a cruise around the world.

The couple were swept away by a strong current.

deck	[dɛk]	one of the floors of a ship
dock	[dɒk]	an area of water beside land where ships go so that people can get on or off them
ferry	[fɛri]	a boat that regularly takes people or things a short distance across water
fisherman	[fɪʃərmən]	a person who catches fish as a job or for sport
harbor	[hɑrbər]	an area of water next to the land where boats can safely stay (<i>In British English, use harbour</i>)
harbour (BRIT)		<i>see harbor</i>
horizon	[hɔraɪzən]	the line that appears between the sky and the sea; <i>on the horizon</i>
island	[aɪlənd]	a piece of land that is completely surrounded by water
jet ski™	[dʒɛt ski]	a small machine like a motorcycle that travels on water

kayak	[kɑɪæk]	a covered canoe
lake	[leɪk]	a large area of water with land around it
lifebelt (BRIT)		see life preserver
lifeboat	[laɪfbɔ:t]	a boat that is used for saving people who are in danger at sea
lifeguard	[laɪfgɑ:d]	a person who works at a beach and helps people when they are in danger
life preserver	[laɪf prɪzɜ:vər]	a large ring that you can hold onto to stop you from going under water (<i>In British English, use lifebelt</i>)
lighthouse	[laɪthaʊ]	a tower that is built near or in the sea, with a flashing lamp that warns ships of danger
mouth	[maʊθ]	the place where a river goes into the sea
navy	[neɪvi]	the people who fight for a country at sea

EXAMPLES

We went on a luxury ship with five passenger decks.

The next ferry departs at 7 o'clock.

The fishing boats left the harbor.

A small boat appeared on the horizon.

Her son was in the Navy.

oar	[ɔr]	a long pole with one flat end that you use for rowing a boat
ocean	[ouʃən]	1 one of the five very large areas of salt water on the Earth's surface; <i>the Indian Ocean</i> 2 same as sea ; <i>The ocean was calm.</i>
paddle	[pædəl]	a short pole with two flat ends that you use for rowing a small boat
pebble	[pɛbəl]	a small, smooth stone
pond	[pɒnd]	a small area of water
port	[pɔrt]	1 an area of water next to land where ships arrive and leave. It is larger than a harbor. 2 a town by the sea where ships arrive and leave
quay	[ki]	a long structure built next to

		water where boats can stop
river	[rɪvər]	a long line of water that flows into the sea
sail	[seɪl]	a large piece of cloth on a boat, that catches the wind and moves the boat along
sailing	[seɪlɪŋ]	the activity or sport of sailing boats; <i>go sailing</i>
sailor	[seɪlər]	1 someone who works on a ship 2 someone who sails a boat for pleasure
sand	[sænd]	a powder made of very small pieces of stone that you find on most beaches
sea	[si]	1 the large area of salty water that covers the Earth's surface; <i>The sea was calm.</i> 2 a large area of salty water that is part of an ocean or is surrounded by land; <i>the North Sea</i>
seaside	[siːsaɪd]	an area that is close to the sea, especially where people go for

their vacations; *at the seaside*

EXAMPLES

We swam in the river.

I live by the sea.

Ayr is a seaside town on the west coast of Scotland.

We spent a day at the seaside.

seaweed	[siːwiːd]	a plant that grows in the sea
shell	[ʃɛl]	the hard part of a small sea creature that you find on beaches
ship	[ʃɪp]	a very large boat that carries people or goods
shore	[ʃɔːr]	the land along the edge of the sea or a lake
speedboat	[spiːdbɔːt]	a boat that can go very fast because it has a powerful engine
stream	[striːm]	a small narrow river
submarine	[sʌbməˈriːn]	a type of ship that can travel below the surface of the sea
surfboard	[sɜːfboːrd]	a long narrow board that people use for surfing

swimmer	[swɪmər]	<p>1 someone who swims, especially for sport or pleasure; <i>He's a fast swimmer.</i></p> <p>2 someone who is swimming; <i>There are swimmers in the lake.</i></p>
swimming	[swɪmɪŋ]	the activity of swimming, especially as a sport or for pleasure; <i>go swimming</i>
tide	[taɪd]	the change in the level of the sea towards the land and away from the land that happens twice a day; <i>at low/high tide</i>
voyage	[vɔɪdʒ]	a long trip on a boat
water	[wɔtər]	a clear, thin liquid that has no color or taste. It falls from clouds as rain.
wave	[weɪv]	a higher part of water on the surface of the sea, caused by the wind blowing on the water
yacht	[jɒt]	a large boat with sails or a motor, used for racing or for leisure trips

EXAMPLES

We walked along the shore.

I'm going to buy a surfboard and learn to surf.

They began the long voyage down the river.

Waves crashed against the rocks.

VERBS

board	[bɔːrd]	to get onto a boat in order to travel somewhere
dive	[daɪv]	1 to jump into water with your arms and your head going in first 2 to go under the surface of the sea or a lake, using special equipment for breathing
drown	[draʊn]	to die under water because you cannot breathe
float	[flaʊt]	to stay on the surface of a liquid, and not sink
launch	[lɔːntʃ]	to put a boat into water
navigate	[nævɪgeɪt]	to find the direction that you need to travel in, using a map or

		the sun, for example
row	[r <u>o</u>]	to make a boat move through the water by using oars
sail	[s <u>e</u> ɪl]	to move over water on a boat
sink	[sɪ <u>n</u> k]	to go below the surface of the water
steer	[st <u>i</u> ə]	to control a boat so that it goes in the direction that you want
surf	[s <u>ɜ</u> rf]	to ride on big waves using a special board
swim	[sw <u>i</u> m]	to move through water by making movements with your arms and legs

ADJECTIVES

calm	[k <u>a</u> m]	not moving much; <i>The sea was calm.</i>
coastal	[k <u>o</u> ustəl]	in the sea or on the land near the coast

EXAMPLES

We went diving to look at fish.

Garbage floated on the surface of the river.

The Titanic was launched in 1911.
We sailed across the bay.
The boat hit the rocks and began to sink.
Do you like swimming?
Coastal areas were flooded.

marine	[məˈrɪn]	relating to the sea or living in the sea; <i>marine animals</i>
rough	[rʌf]	with a lot of waves; <i>The sea was rough.</i>
sandy	[ˈsændi]	covered with sand
seasick	[ˈsiːsɪk]	feeling sick on a boat

EXAMPLES

Nha Trang has a beautiful sandy beach.
Do you get seasick?

body

NOUNS

PARTS OF THE BODY

ankle	[<u>æ</u> ŋkəl]	the part of your body where your foot joins your leg
arm	[<u>ɑ</u> rm]	one of the two parts of your body between your shoulders and your hands
artery	[<u>ɑ</u> rtəri]	one of the tubes in your body that carry blood from your heart to the rest of your body
back	[b <u>æ</u> k]	the part of your body from your neck to your waist that is on the opposite side to your chest
blood	[bl <u>ʌ</u> d]	the red liquid that flows inside your body
body	[b <u>ɒ</u> di]	all your physical parts
bone	[b <u>oʊ</u> n]	one of the hard white parts inside your body

bottom	[bɒtəm]	the part of your body that you sit on
brain	[breɪn]	the organ inside your head that controls your body and allows you to think and to feel things
breast	[brɛst]	one of the two soft, round parts on a woman's chest that can produce milk to feed a baby
calf	[kæf]	the thick part at the back of your leg,
(PL) calves	[kævz]	between your ankle and your knee
cheek	[tʃi:k]	one of the two sides of your face below your eyes
chest	[tʃɛst]	the top part of the front of your body
chin	[tʃɪn]	the part of your face below your mouth
ear	[ɪər]	one of the two parts of your body that you hear sounds with
elbow	[ɛlboʊ]	the part in the middle of your arm where it bends

eye [aɪ] one of the two parts of your
body that you see with

EXAMPLES

“What color are your eyes?” – “I have blue eyes.”

eyebrow [aɪbraʊ] one of the two lines of hair that
grows above your eyes

eyelash [aɪlæʃ] one of the hairs that grows on
the edges of your eyelids

eyelid [aɪlɪd] one of the pieces of skin that
covers your eyes when they are
closed

face [feɪs] the front part of your head

feature [fi:tʃər] any part of your face, such as
your eyes, your nose, or your
mouth

finger [fɪŋgər] one of the long thin parts at the
end of each hand

fist [fɪst] your hand with your fingers
closed tightly together

flesh [flɛʃ] the soft part of your body that is

		between your bones and your skin
foot	[f <u>ʊ</u> t]	the part of your body that is at the end of your leg, and that you stand on
(PL) feet	[fi:t]	
forehead	[fɔːrhɛd, fɔːrɪd]	the front part of your head between your eyebrows and your hair
fringe (BRIT)		see bangs
hair	[hɛə]	<p>1 the fine threads that grow on your head; <i>I have black hair.</i></p> <p>2 the short threads that grow on your body; <i>He has hair on his chest.</i></p>
hand	[hænd]	the part of your body at the end of your arm that you use for holding things
head	[hɛd]	the top part of your body that has your eyes, mouth, and brain in it
heart	[hɑːt]	the part inside your chest that makes the blood move around your body

heel [hīl] the back part of your foot, just below your ankle

EXAMPLES

Sarah made a gesture with her fist.

The doctor felt my forehead to see if it was hot.

“What color is your hair?” – “I have light brown hair.”

Your hair looks nice – have you had it cut?

hip [hīp] one of the two areas or bones at the sides of your body between the tops of your legs and your waist

jaw [dʒə] the top and bottom bones of your mouth

kidney [kīdni] one of the two organs in your body that remove waste liquid from your blood

knee [nī] the part in the middle of your leg where it bends

leg [lɛg] one of the long parts of your body that you use for walking and standing

lips	[lɪps]	the two soft outer parts at the edge of your mouth
liver	[lɪvər]	the large organ in your body that cleans your blood
lung	[lʌŋ]	one of the two large organs inside your chest that you use for breathing
mouth	[maʊθ]	the part of your face that you use for eating or speaking
muscle	[mʌsəl]	one of the parts inside your body that connect your bones, and that help you to move
nail	[neɪl]	the thin hard part that grows at the end of each of your fingers and toes
neck	[nɛk]	the part of your body between your head and the rest of your body
nose	[noʊz]	the part of your face above your mouth, that you use for smelling and breathing
organ	[ɔrgən]	a part of your body, for example your brain or your heart, that

		has a particular purpose
rib	[rɪb]	one of the 12 pairs of curved bones that surround your chest
shoulder	[ʃəʊldər]	one of the two parts of your body between your neck and the tops of your arms

EXAMPLES

She bites her nails.

shin	[ʃɪn]	the front part of your leg between your knee and your ankle
skeleton	[skɛlɪtən]	all the bones in your body
skin	[skɪn]	the substance that covers the outside of your body
spine	[spaɪn]	the row of bones down your back
stomach	[stʌmək]	1 the organ inside your body where food goes when you eat it; <i>a full stomach</i> 2 the front part of your body

		below your waist; <i>lie on your stomach</i>
thigh	[θaɪ]	the top part of your leg, above your knee
throat	[θrəʊt]	1 the back of your mouth and inside your neck, where you swallow 2 the front part of your neck
thumb	[θʌm]	the short thick part on the side of your hand next to your four fingers
toe	[təʊ]	one of the five parts at the end of your foot
tongue	[tʌŋ]	the soft part inside your mouth that moves when you speak or eat
tooth	[tuθ]	one of the hard white objects in your
(PL) teeth	[tiθ]	mouth, that you use for biting and eating
vein	[veɪn]	a thin tube in your body that carries blood to your heart
voice	[vɔɪs]	the sound that comes from your

		mouth when you speak or sing
waist	[weɪst]	the middle part of your body
wrist	[rɪst]	the part between your hand and your arm that bends when you move your hand

DESCRIBING PEOPLE

age	[eɪdʒ]	the number of years that you have lived
bangs	[bæŋz]	hair that is cut so that it hangs over your forehead: <i>short bangs</i> (In British English, use fringe)
beard	[biəd]	the hair that grows on a man's chin and cheeks
complexion	[kəmplekʃən]	the natural color of the skin on your face; <i>a pale complexion</i>
expression	[ɪkspreʃən]	the way that your face looks at a particular moment; <i>a shocked expression</i>
false teeth	[fɔls tiθ]	artificial teeth that someone wears if they do not have their natural teeth

freckles	[frɛkəlɜ]	small light-brown spots on someone's skin
fringe (BRIT)		see bangs
gesture	[dʒɛstʃər]	a movement that you make with a part of your body, especially your hands, to express emotion or information; <i>make a gesture</i>
glasses	[glæsɪz]	two pieces of glass or plastic in a frame, that some people wear in front of their eyes to help them to see better; <i>wear glasses</i>
hairstyle	[hɛəstɑɪl]	the way that your hair is cut or arranged; <i>a new hairstyle</i>
height	[haɪt]	your size from your feet to the top of your head; <i>a man of average height</i>
measurement	[mɛʒərmənt]	the size around a part of your body, that you need to know when you are buying clothes; <i>your hip/waist/chest measurement</i>
mole	[moʊl]	a natural dark spot on someone's skin
moustache		see mustache

(BRIT)

mustache	[mʌstæʃ]	the hair that grows between a man's nose and mouth (<i>In British English, use moustache</i>)
pimple	[pɪmpəl]	a small red lump or mark on someone's skin (<i>In British English, use spot</i>)
scar	[skɑr]	a mark that is left on someone's skin after a wound gets better
size	[saɪz]	how big or small something is
smile	[smaɪl]	an expression on your face when you curve up the corners of your mouth because you are happy or you think that something is funny; <i>give a smile</i>

EXAMPLES

He has short red hair and freckles.

“What size are you?” – “Size ten.”

He was smiling.

spot (BRIT)

see **pimple**

tears	[tɪərz]	drops of liquid that come from your eyes when you cry
weight	[weɪt]	how heavy a person or thing is
wrinkles	[rɪŋkəlz]	lines that form on your face when you grow old

VERBS

grow	[grəʊ]	to gradually become bigger
look	[lʊk]	to seem to have a particular quality; <i>He looks sad.</i>
look like		to have a particular appearance; <i>What does he look like?</i>
weigh	[weɪ]	to have a particular weight; <i>She weighs 140 pounds.</i>

THINGS PEOPLE DO WITH THEIR BODIES

blow your nose		to force air out of your nose in order to clear it
cry	[kraɪ]	to have tears coming from your eyes, usually because you are sad

fold your arms

to put one arm under the other
and hold them over your chest

go red

if you go red, your face becomes
red because you feel
embarrassed

**have your hair
cut**

if you have your hair cut,
someone uses scissors to make
your hair shorter

EXAMPLES

I've got a big pimple on my nose.

He had tears in his eyes.

She has put on weight.

He has lost weight.

His face was covered with wrinkles.

Sara has grown a lot.

She was crying.

nod

[nɒd]

to move your head up and down
to say "yes"

**shake hands
with someone**

to say hello or goodbye to
someone by holding their right
hand in your right hand and
moving it up and down

shake your head

to move your head from side to side to say “no”

shrug

[ʃrʌg]

to move your shoulders up to show that you do not know or care about something

smile

[smaɪl]

to curve up the corners of your mouth because you are happy or you think that something is funny

wave at someone

to hold your hand up and wave it from side to side in order to say hello or goodbye to someone

SENSES

feel

[fi:l]

1 to experience a particular physical feeling; *I feel cold.*
2 used for describing the way that something seems when you touch it or experience it; *This room feels cold.*
3 to touch something with your hand, so that you can find out what it is like; *feel someone's forehead*

4 to be aware of something because you touch it or it touches you; *feel the wind on your face*

hear [hɪər] to become aware of a sound through your ears

see [si] to notice something using your eyes

EXAMPLES

“Are you okay?” I asked. She nodded and smiled.

Claude shook hands with David.

“Did you see Magda?” Anna shook her head.

I can hear music.

It’s too dark – I can’t see anything.

smell [smɛl] 1 to have a quality that you notice by breathing in through your nose; *This flower smells sweet.*

2 to notice something when you breathe in through your nose; *I can smell smoke.*

taste [teɪst] 1 to have a particular flavor that

you notice when you are eating or drinking; *This soup tastes delicious.*

2 to notice the flavor of something that you are eating or drinking; *I can taste salt in this soup.*

touch [tʌtʃ]

to put your hand onto something

BODY POSITIONS

crouch [kraʊtʃ]

to bend your legs so that you are close to the ground

kneel [ni:l]

to bend your legs and rest with one or both of your knees on the ground

lie [laɪ]

to be in a flat position, and not standing or sitting; *lie on the ground*

lie down

to move your body so that it is flat on something, usually when you want to sleep or rest

sit [sɪt]

to have the lower part of your

		body resting on a chair and the upper part straight
sit down		to move your body down until you are sitting on something
stand	[stænd]	to be on your feet
stand up		to move so that you are on your feet
stretch	[strɛtʃ]	to put your arms or legs out very straight

EXAMPLES

She reached down and touched her toes.

I crouched down to stroke the dog.

John was lying on the sofa.

Why don't you go upstairs and lie down?

Tom sat down beside me.

He yawned and stretched.

ADJECTIVES

bald	[bɔld]	with no hair, or very little hair, on the top of your head
beautiful	[byʊtɪfəl]	very attractive to look at
big	[bɪg]	large in size

blind	[blaɪnd]	unable to see
blonde	[blɒnd]	1 blonde hair is pale or yellow; <i>She has blonde hair.</i> 2 someone who is blonde has pale or yellow hair; <i>She is blonde.</i>
curly	[kɜːrli]	shaped in curves; <i>curly hair</i>
dark	[dɑːrk]	black or brown; <i>dark hair; dark eyes</i>
deaf	[deɪf]	unable to hear anything or unable to hear very well
disabled	[dɪseɪbəld]	having an injury or a condition that makes it difficult for you to move around
dyed	[daɪd]	if you have dyed hair, you have changed the color of your hair using a special substance
fair	[fɛər]	fair hair is pale or yellow; fair skin is very pale
fat	[fæt]	weighing too much
handsome	[hændsəm]	having an attractive face
old	[əʊld]	1 having lived for many years;

not young; *an old man*
2 used for talking or asking
about someone's age; *six years
old*

overweight [ˌoʊvərweɪt] weighing more than is healthy
or attractive

pretty [prɪti] attractive and pleasant

short [ʃɔrt] not tall

EXAMPLES

She was a beautiful woman with fine features.

“How old are you?” – “I’m 34.”

“What does she look like?” – “She is short, and has curly blonde hair.”

skinny [skɪni] extremely thin or too thin

slim [slɪm] thin in an attractive way

small [smɔl] not large in size or amount

straight [streɪt] not bending or curving; *straight
hair*

tall [tɔl] 1 of a greater height than other
people; *a tall woman*
2 used when you are asking or

talking about someone's height;
How tall are you?

thin	[θɪn]	having no extra fat on your body
ugly	[ʌgli]	very unpleasant to look at
young	[yʌŋ]	not having lived for very long

EXAMPLES

A slim young girl was standing in the middle of the room.

He is taller than you.

She is 5 feet 4 inches tall.

He was a tall, thin man with a grey beard.

business

NOUNS

accounts	[əkaʊnts]	records of all the money that a business receives and spends
ad	[æd]	information that tells you about something such as a product, an event, or a job (<i>In British English, use advert</i>)
advert (BRIT)		see ad
advertising	[ædvɜːtaɪzɪŋ]	the business of creating information that tells people about a product in order to persuade them to buy it; <i>an advertising campaign; an advertising agency</i>
agent	[eɪdʒənt]	someone whose job is to do business for another person or company
AGM	[eɪ dʒi ɛm]	short for “annual general meeting”:

		a meeting that a company has once a year to discuss the previous year's activities and accounts
boom	[b <u>u</u> m]	an increase in the number of things that people are buying; <i>an economic boom; a boom in tourism</i>
brand	[br <u>æ</u> nd]	a product that has its own name and is made by a particular company
budget	[b <u>ʌ</u> dʒɪt]	the amount of money that you have available to spend

EXAMPLES

I work in advertising.

You are buying direct, rather than through an agent.

What is your favorite brand of coffee?

Our company does not have a large budget for training.

business	[b <u>ɪ</u> znɪs]	1 work that is related to producing, buying and selling things; <i>do business with someone</i> 2 used to talk about how many
-----------------	-------------------	--

		products a company is selling; <i>Business is good.</i> 3 an organization that produces and sells goods or that provides a service; <i>a hairdressing business</i>
CEO	[si i ɔʊ]	short for “chief executive officer”: the person who is responsible for the management of the whole company
chair	[tʃeə]	the person in charge of a company or an organization
client	[klaɪənt]	a person who pays someone for a service
commerce	[kɒmɜːs]	the buying and selling of large amounts of things
company	[kʌmpəni]	a business that sells goods or services
competition	[kɒmpɪtɪʃən]	the activities of companies that are trying to sell more products than each other
consumer	[kɒnsʊmə]	someone who buys something or uses a service
corporation	[kɔːpəreɪʃən]	a large business or company

costs	[kɒstʃ]	the amount of money that you must spend in order to run your business
customer	[kʌstəmə]	someone who buys something from a shop or a website; <i>customer services; customer relations</i>
deal	[di:l]	an agreement or an arrangement in business; <i>do a deal</i>

EXAMPLES

They worried that German companies would lose business.

My brother runs a thriving furniture business.

The government is not doing enough to help small and medium-sized businesses.

A lawyer and his client were sitting at the next table.

The company owes money to more than sixty banks.

They faced competition from new online companies.

We need to cut costs.

The supermarket wants to attract new customers.

debt	[dɛt]	1 money that you owe to someone; <i>a \$50,000 debt</i> 2 the state of owing money; <i>be in debt</i>
director	[dɪrɛktər, daɪ-]	one of the people who control a

		company or an organization, and meet regularly to make important decisions
executive	[ɪgzɛkyətɪv]	someone who has an important job at a company
firm	[fɜːrm]	same as company
growth	[grəʊθ]	increase in profits or sales
management	[mænɪdʒmənt]	1 the control of a business 2 the people who control a business
manager	[mænɪdʒər]	someone who runs a business or part of a business
market	[mɑːrkɪt]	the people who want to buy a particular product
market research	[mɑːrkɪt rɪsɜːrtʃ]	the business activity of finding out about what people want, need, and buy
marketing	[mɑːkɪtɪŋ]	the business of deciding how to sell a product, for example what price it is, where it is sold, and how it is advertised

meeting [mi:tɪŋ] an event in which a group of people come together to discuss things or make decisions

PR [pi ar] short for “public relations”: the part of a company’s work that is concerned with getting people to like the company

product [prɒdʌkt] something that you make or grow in order to sell it

EXAMPLES

They are still paying off their debts.

Many firms were going out of business.

The zoo needed better management rather than more money.

The market for organic wines is growing.

There were meetings between senior management and staff.

This mobile phone is one of our most successful products.

profit [prɒfɪt] the amount of money that you gain when you sell something for more than it cost to make it;
make a profit

promotion [prəməʊʃən] an attempt to make a product successful or popular, especially

		by advertising
publicity	[pʌblɪsɪti]	information that attracts the public's attention to a person or a product
retail	[riːɪl]	the activity of selling goods directly to the public
sales	[seɪlz]	the quantity of a product that is sold
shareholder	[ʃɛərhoʊldər]	someone who owns shares in a company
stocks and shares	[stɒks ənd ʃɛəz]	the parts of company that people buy in order to invest money in the company
supervisor	[sʊpərvaɪzər]	someone who is in charge of activities or people
trade	[treɪd]	the activity of buying and selling goods
turnover	[tɜːnəʊvər]	the value of the goods or services that are sold by a company during a particular period of time

VERBS

advertise	[ədˈvɜːtaɪz]	to tell people about a product or a service in newspapers, on television, on signs, or on the internet
break even		to make enough money to pay for costs, but not enough to make a profit
buy	[baɪ]	to get something by paying money for it
employ	[ɪmˈplɔɪ]	to pay someone to work for a person or a company

EXAMPLES

The group made a profit of \$1.05 million.

Texas has a long history of trade with Mexico.

The company had a turnover of \$3.8 million last year.

The airline hopes to break even next year and make a profit the following year.

They bought shares in US-AIR.

The firm employs 800 staff.

expand	[ɪkˈspænd]	1 to become bigger, with more people, goods or activities; <i>Our business expanded.</i>
---------------	------------	---

		2 to make something larger; <i>expand services</i>
go out of business		if a company goes out of business, it stops trading because it does not have enough money
improve	[impr <u>u</u> v]	to get better or to make something get better
invest	[inv <u>e</u> st]	to put money into a business, in order to try to make a profit from it
launch	[l <u>ɔ</u> ntʃ]	to start selling a new product to the public
manage	[m <u>æ</u> nɪdʒ]	to control a business
market	[m <u>ɑ</u> rkɪt]	to advertise and sell a product
negotiate	[nɪ <u>g</u> oʊʃiət]	to talk about a situation in order to reach an agreement
owe	[<u>o</u>]	to have to pay money to someone; <i>owe someone money</i>
sell	[s <u>ɛ</u> l]	to let someone have something that you own in return for money

ADJECTIVES

bankrupt	[bæŋkrʌpt]	not having enough money to pay your debts; <i>go bankrupt</i>
commercial	[kəmɜːrʃəl]	relating to the buying and selling of things
medium-sized	[mɪdiəm saɪzd]	not large and not small; <i>a medium-sized firm</i>
online	[ɒnlaɪn]	using the internet to sell goods; <i>an online service; online retailing; online shopping</i>
private	[praɪvɪt]	not owned by the government

EXAMPLES

I want to expand my business.

Many airlines could go out of business.

We need to improve performance.

The firm launched a new clothing range.

If the firm cannot sell its products, it will go bankrupt.

New York is a center of commercial activity.

profitable	[prɒfɪtəbəl]	making a profit
senior	[sɪniər]	having an important job in an organization

small [smɔl] not large in size or amount; *a small business*

thriving [θraɪvɪŋ] successful

IDIOMS

at the cutting edge involved in the most exciting and new developments

blue-sky thinking new creative ideas

think outside the box to think in a new and creative way

EXAMPLES

Drug manufacturing is the most profitable business in America.

This company is at the cutting edge of technology.

cars and road travel

NOUNS

accelerator

(BRIT)

see **gas pedal**

accident

[æksɪdənt]

when a vehicle hits something and causes injury or damage

ambulance

[æmbyələns]

a vehicle for taking people to hospital; *call an ambulance*

bonnet *(BRIT)*

see **hood**

boot *(BRIT)*

see **trunk**

brake

[brɛk]

the part in a vehicle that you press with your foot to make the vehicle go more slowly or stop

breakdown

[brɛkdaʊn]

an occasion when a vehicle stops working; *have a breakdown*

bumper

[bʌmpər]

a heavy bar at the front and back of

a vehicle that protects the vehicle if it hits something

bus	[bʌs]	a large motor vehicle that carries passengers; <i>a school bus; a tour bus; a double-decker bus; catch a bus</i>
car	[kɑr]	a motor vehicle with space for about five people; <i>drive/park a car; a sports car; a racing car; a police car</i>
car park (BRIT)		see parking lot
caravan	[kærəvæn]	a large vehicle that is pulled by a car. You can sleep and eat in a caravan on vacation.
clutch	[klʌtʃ]	the part of a vehicle that you press with your foot before you move the gear shift
coach	[kəʊtʃ]	a comfortable bus that travels between cities or takes people on long journeys; <i>a coach tour/trip</i>
crossroads	[krɒsrəʊdz]	a place where two roads cross each other

EXAMPLES

There's been an accident.
Six people were injured in the accident.
He missed his last bus home.
They arrived by car.
The car won't start.

dashboard	[dæʃbɔːrd]	the part of a car in front of the driver, where most of the controls are
direction	[dɪrɛkʃən, daɪ-]	the general line that you move in when you are going to a place
directions	[dɪrɛkʃənz, daɪ-]	instructions that tell you how to get somewhere; <i>give someone directions</i>
distance	[dɪstəns]	the amount of space between two places; <i>travel a short/long distance</i>
driver	[draɪvər]	someone who drives a bus, a car, or a train, for example
driver's license	[draɪvərz laɪsəns]	a document showing that you are legally allowed to drive (<i>In British English, use driving licence</i>)

driving licence
(BRIT)

see **driver's license**

engine

[ɛndʒɪn]

the part of a vehicle that produces the power to make it move

fire engine

[faɪər ɛndʒɪn]

a large vehicle that carries firemen and equipment for putting out fires

flat

[flæt]

a small hole in a tire that has been made by a sharp object (*In British English, use **puncture***)

garage

[gərɑːʒ]

1 a building next to your house where you keep your car
2 a public building where you can park your car
3 a place where cars are repaired

gas

[gæs]

the fuel that you use in vehicles to make the engine work (*In British English, use **petrol***)

gas pedal

[gæs pɛdəl]

the part in a vehicle that you press with your foot to make the vehicle go faster

*(In British English, use
accelerator)*

EXAMPLES

You're going in the wrong direction.

He gave us directions to the hospital.

Do you have a driver's license?

He got into the driver's seat and started the engine.

gas station	[gæs steɪʃən]	a place where you buy fuel for your vehicle (<i>In British English, use petrol station</i>)
gear	[gɪər]	a part of an engine that changes power into movement
gear shift	[gɪər ʃɪft]	the lever in a vehicle that you use to change gear (<i>In British English, use gear stick</i>)
gear stick (BRIT)		see gear shift
handbrake	[hændbreɪk]	the brake in a car that you pull with your hand to stop it moving, for example, when you have parked

headlights	[hɛdlɑːts]	the large lights at the front of a vehicle
highway	[haɪweɪ]	a wide road that allows vehicles to travel very fast over a long distance (<i>In British English, use motorway</i>)
hood	[hʊd]	the front part of a car that covers the engine (<i>In British English, use bonnet</i>)
horn	[hɔːn]	an object in a vehicle that makes a loud noise, and that you use as a warning of danger
indicator (BRIT)		see turn signal
journey	[dʒɜːni]	an occasion when you travel from one place to another
lane	[leɪn]	1 a narrow road, especially in the countryside; <i>a country lane</i> 2 a part of a road that is marked by a painted line; <i>the fast lane</i>
license plate	[laɪsəns plɛt]	a sign on the front and back of a vehicle that shows its registration number

(In British English, use **number plate**)

lorry (*BRIT*)

see **truck**

EXAMPLES

The car was in fourth gear.

Yesterday, traffic was light on the highway.

It's a 3-hour journey.

Have a good journey!

make	[meɪk]	the name of the company that made a particular car; <i>a make of car</i>
motorbike	[məʊtəbaɪk]	same as motorcycle ; <i>ride a motorbike</i>
motorcycle	[məʊtəsaɪkəl]	a vehicle with two wheels and an engine
motorway (<i>BRIT</i>)		see highway
number plate (<i>BRIT</i>)		see license plate
oil	[ɔɪl]	a smooth, thick liquid that is used for making machines work

one-way street	[wʌn weɪ stri:t]	a street where vehicles can only go in one direction
parking lot	[pɑ:kɪŋ lɒt]	an area or building where people can leave their cars (<i>In British English, use car park</i>)
parking space	[pɑ:kɪŋ speɪs]	a place where you can park your car
passenger	[pæsiŋdʒər]	someone who is traveling in a vehicle but is not driving it
pedestrian	[pɪdɛstriən]	someone who is walking, especially in a town or city
petrol (BRIT)		see gas
petrol station (BRIT)		see gas station
puncture (BRIT)		see flat
rear-view mirror	[riəv vju mɪrər]	the mirror on the front window of a motor vehicle that allows you to see behind the vehicle
registration number	[rɛdʒɪstreɪʃən nʌmbər]	the official numbers and letters at the front and back of a vehicle

mirror	mɪrər]	side of a car (<i>In British English, use wing mirror</i>)
spare part	[spɛər pɑrt]	a part that you can buy to replace an old or broken part of a vehicle
speed	[spi:d]	how fast something moves
speed camera	[spi:d kæmrə]	a piece of equipment that takes pictures of vehicles if they are going too fast
speed limit	[spi:d lɪmɪt]	the maximum speed that you are legally allowed to drive at
speedometer	[spɪdɔmɪtər]	a piece of equipment in a car that shows how fast you are driving
street	[stri:t]	a road in a city or a town
taxi	[tæksi]	a car that you can hire, with its driver, to take you where you want to go; <i>take/catch a taxi</i>
tire	[taɪər]	a thick round piece of rubber that fits around the wheels of cars (<i>In British English, use tyre</i>)
traffic	[træfɪk]	all the vehicles that are moving

along roads in a particular area;
heavy traffic; oncoming traffic

traffic circle [træfɪk sɜːrkəl] a circle in the road where several roads meet, which vehicles must drive round until they reach the road they need
*(In British English, use **roundabout**)*

EXAMPLES

Don't forget to put on your seat belt.

There was hardly any traffic on the road.

There is heavy traffic between Junctions 14 and 18.

traffic jam [træfɪk dʒæm] a long line of vehicles that cannot move because there is too much traffic, or because the road is blocked

traffic lights [træfɪk laɪts] a set of red, yellow, and green lights that show you when to stop and when to move forward

traffic warden [træfɪk wɔːrdən] someone whose job is to make sure that vehicles are parked legally

trailer	[tr <u>eɪ</u> lər]	a large container on wheels that is pulled by a truck or other vehicle
transport (BRIT)		see transportation
transportation	[tr <u>æ</u> nspər- teɪ <u>f</u> ən]	a system for taking people or things from one place to another in a vehicle; <i>road/air/ rail transportation (In British English, use transport)</i>
truck	[tr <u>ʌ</u> k]	a large vehicle that is used for transporting goods by road (<i>In British English, use lorry</i>)
trunk	[tr <u>ʌ</u> ŋk]	the space at the back of a car that is used for carrying things in (<i>In British English, use boot</i>)
turn signal	[t <u>ɜ</u> rn sɪgnəl]	a flashing light on a vehicle that tells you when the vehicle is going to turn left or right (<i>In British English, use indicator</i>)
tyre (BRIT)		see tire
van	[v <u>æ</u> n]	a vehicle like a large car or a small truck with space for

		carrying things in the back
vehicle	[vɪkəl]	a machine that carries people or things from one place to another
wheel	[wiːl]	<p>1 one of the round objects under a vehicle that allows it to move along the ground; <i>the front/back wheel</i></p> <p>2 the round object on a vehicle that you turn to make the vehicle go in different directions; <i>a steering wheel</i></p>
windscreen (BRIT)		see windshield

EXAMPLES

He opened the trunk and put my bags in.
There are too many vehicles on the road.

windshield	[wɪndʃɪld]	the glass window at the front of a vehicle (<i>In British English, use windscreen</i>)
wing mirror (BRIT)		see side-view mirror

VERBS

accelerate	[æksɛləreɪt]	to go faster
brake	[breɪk]	to use the brakes in order to make a vehicle stop or slow down
break down		to stop working; <i>The car broke down.</i>
crash	[kræʃ]	if a vehicle crashes, it hits something and is damaged
drive	[draɪv]	1 to control the movement and direction of a vehicle; <i>Can you drive?</i> 2 to take someone somewhere in a vehicle; <i>I'll drive you home.</i>
give way (BRIT)		see yield
hitch-hike	[hɪtʃhaɪk]	to ask people to drive you somewhere, by standing by the side of a road and holding out your thumb
overtake (BRIT)		see pass

park	[pɑrk]	to stop a vehicle and leave it somewhere
pass	[pæs]	to go past another vehicle that is going in the same direction (<i>In British English, use overtake</i>)
skid	[skɪd]	to slide sideways
slow down		to reduce the speed you are driving at
speed	[spi:d]	to drive faster than the speed limit

EXAMPLES

A dog ran across the road and I braked quickly.

I crashed into the back of a truck.

We were driving at 70 miles an hour.

I'll drive you to work.

Jeff hitch-hiked to New York.

You should slow down when you are passing a cyclist.

The car skidded on the icy road.

You're going too fast – slow down.

speed up	to start driving more quickly
start up	when an engine starts up, it starts working

steer	[st <u>ɪ</u> ər]	to control a vehicle so that it goes in the direction you want
stop	[stɒp]	to not move any more
tow	[t <u>oʊ</u>]	to pull another vehicle along behind
travel	[træ <u>v</u> əl]	to go from one place to another, often to a place that is far away
yield		to let another vehicle go before you <i>(In British English, use give way)</i>

PHRASES

“Construction”	if a road sign says “Construction,” it means that people are fixing the road (<i>In British English, use “Roadworks”</i>)
“No entry”	if a road sign says “No entry,” you must not go along that road
“Roadworks” <i>(BRIT)</i>	see “Construction”

EXAMPLES

Eric started the car and drove off.

People often travel hundreds of miles to get here.

He uses the truck to tow his trailer.

celebrations and ceremonies

NOUNS

baptism	[bæptɪzəm]	a ceremony in which a person is baptized
bar mitzvah	[bɑr mɪtsvə]	a ceremony for a Jewish boy on his thirteenth birthday
bat mitzvah	[bat mɪtsvə]	a ceremony for a Jewish girl on her thirteenth birthday
birth	[bɜrθ]	the time when a baby is born; <i>the birth of our daughter</i>
birthday	[bɜrθdeɪ, -di]	a date when you celebrate the day that you were born
bride	[braɪd]	a woman on her wedding day
cemetery	[sɛmətəri]	a place where dead people are buried
ceremony	[sɛrɪməni]	a formal event
christening	[krɪsənɪŋ]	a ceremony in which members of a church welcome a baby and give it a name

Christmas	[krɪsməs]	the period around the 25th December, when Christians celebrate the birth of Jesus Christ; <i>at Christmas</i>
Christmas Day	[krɪsməs deɪ]	the 25th of December; <i>on Christmas Day</i>
Christmas Eve	[krɪsməs ɪv]	the 24th of December; <i>on Christmas Eve</i>
death	[deθ]	the end of a person's life
Easter	[ɪstər]	a Christian festival in March or April when people celebrate Jesus Christ's return to life; <i>at Easter</i>
engagement	[ɪŋgeɪdʒmənt]	an agreement to get married to somebody
Father's Day	[fɑðərz deɪ]	a day when you give a card or present to your father to show that you love him; <i>on Father's Day</i>

EXAMPLES

I'm going to my grandson's baptism tomorrow.

It's my birthday today.

I'm going to the cemetery to visit my grandma's grave.

I always visit my parents at Christmas.

festival	[fɛstɪvəl]	a time when people celebrate a special event
festivities	[fɛstɪvɪtɪz]	events that are organized in order to celebrate something
fireworks	[faɪərwɜːks]	things that fly up into the air and explode, making bright colors in the sky; <i>a fireworks display</i>
funeral	[fyʊnərəl]	a ceremony in which the body of a dead person is buried or cremated
gift	[gɪft]	same as present
graduation	[grædʒueɪʃən]	a ceremony for students when they have completed their studies at a university or college
grave	[ɡreɪv]	a place in the ground where a dead person is buried
greeting card	[ɡriːɪŋ kɑːd]	a folded card with a message inside that you give to someone

on a special occasion (*In British English, use greetings card*)

greetings card
(BRIT)

see **greeting card**

groom [grum]

a man on his wedding day

Hanukkah [hɑnəkə]

a festival in November or December when Jewish people remember a special time when a temple was given back to them; *during Hanukkah*

honeymoon [hʌni:mun]

a vacation that a man and woman take after their wedding

invitation [inviteɪʃən]

a written or spoken request to go to a party or a ceremony

Lent [lent]

the forty days before Easter, when some Christians stop doing something that they enjoy; *during Lent*

EXAMPLES

The Christmas festivities lasted for more than a week.

We watched the fireworks from our balcony.

I need to choose a gift for my mom's birthday.

We went to Paris for our honeymoon.

We received an invitation to their wedding.

Maureen gave up chocolate for Lent.

marriage	[mæɹɪdʒ]	1 the relationship between a husband and wife; <i>a happy marriage</i> 2 same as wedding ; <i>a marriage ceremony</i>
Mother's Day	[mʌðərz deɪ]	a day when you give a card or present to your mother to show that you love her; <i>on Mother's Day</i>
New Year's Day	[njuː jɪərz deɪ]	the day when people celebrate the start of the year; <i>on New Year's Day</i>
New Year's Eve	[njuː jɪərz iv]	the last day of the year; <i>on New Year's Eve</i>
occasion	[əkeɪʒən]	an important event, ceremony, or celebration; <i>a special occasion</i>
party	[pɑːti]	an event where you enjoy yourself with friends doing things like eating or dancing; <i>have a party</i>

Passover	[pæsouvər]	a festival in March or April when Jewish people celebrate a special time when God helped them; <i>during Passover</i>
present	[prezənt]	something that you give to someone on a special occasion
procession	[prəsɛʃən]	a line of people or vehicles that follows one another as part of a ceremony
public holiday	[pʌblɪk	a day when most of the shops, businesses, hɒlɪdeɪ] and schools in a country are closed, often to celebrate a particular event
Ramadan	[ræmədɑːn]	the ninth month of the Muslim year, when Muslims celebrate the time that God spoke the words of their holy book; <i>during Ramadan</i>
retirement	[rɪtaɪərmənt]	the time when you stop work; <i>a retirement party</i>
Thanksgiving	[θæŋksgɪvɪŋ]	a holiday in November when families in America have a

special meal together to
celebrate all the good things in
their lives; *on Thanksgiving*

EXAMPLES

We have New Year's Day off from work.

I'm having a party on Friday night – would you like to come?

The store is closed on Sundays and public holidays.

Valentine's Day [væləntaɪnzdeɪ] the 14th of February, when you give a card or flowers to the person you love; *on Valentine's Day*

wake [weɪk] an event before or after a funeral when friends and family remember the person who died

wedding [wɛdɪŋ] a ceremony when two people get married

wedding anniversary [wɛdɪŋ ænɪvɜːrsəri] a date when you celebrate the day you got married; *our 10th wedding anniversary*

VERBS

baptize	[bæpt <u>aɪ</u> z]	to touch someone with water, to show that they have become a member of the Christian church; <i>baptize a baby</i>
be born		when a baby is born, it comes out of its mother's body at the beginning of its life
bury	[bɜri]	to put the body of a dead person into a grave and cover it with earth
celebrate	[sɛlibreɪt]	to do something enjoyable for a special reason; <i>celebrate your birthday</i>
cremate	[krɪmeɪt]	to burn the body of a dead person
die	[daɪ]	to stop living
fast	[fæst]	to not eat any food for a period of time
get engaged		1 when two people get engaged, they agree to marry each other; <i>Sue and Rishi got engaged.</i> 2 when you get engaged to someone, you agree to marry

them; *I got engaged to my boyfriend.*

EXAMPLES

We went out for dinner on Valentine's Day.

This necklace was an anniversary present from my husband.

My sister was born in 1995.

We're celebrating the birth of our baby boy.

My dad died two years ago.

We fasted during Ramadan.

get married

1 when two people get married, they become husband and wife; *John and Linda got married.*

2 when you get married to someone, you become their husband or wife; *John got married to Linda.*

invite

[ɪnvaɪt]

to ask someone to come to an event; *invite someone to a party*

marry

[mæri]

same as **get married**

organize

[ɔːrgənaɪz]

to plan or arrange something; *organize a party*

turn [tɜrn] to reach a particular age; *turn 40*

wish [wɪʃ] to express the hope that someone will be lucky or happy;
wish someone a happy birthday

PHRASES

Happy birthday! you say 'Happy birthday!' to someone when you meet them on their birthday

Happy Christmas!
(BRIT) see [Merry Christmas](#)

Merry Christmas! you say "Merry Christmas!" to people when you meet them on Christmas Day

EXAMPLES

Let's invite some friends over for dinner.

My brother has just turned 17.

clothes

NOUNS

bathing suit	[bəɪðɪŋ sʊt]	a piece of clothing that women and girls wear when they go swimming (<i>In British English, use swimsuit</i>)
belt	[bɛlt]	a strip of leather or cloth that you wear around your waist
bikini	[bɪkɪni]	a piece of clothing with two parts, that women wear for swimming
blouse	[blaʊs]	a shirt for a girl or a woman
boots	[buːts]	shoes that cover your whole foot and the lower part of your leg; <i>a pair of boots</i>
bra	[brɑ]	a piece of underwear that women wear to support their breasts
button	[bʌtən]	a small hard object that you push through holes (=

EXAMPLES

He was dressed in a shirt, dark pants, and boots.

Isabel's striped dress suited her very well.

fashion	[fæʃən]	1 the activity or business that involves styles of clothing and appearance; <i>a fashion designer; a fashion show</i> 2 a style of clothing that is popular at a particular time; <i>the latest fashion</i>
gloves	[glʌvz]	pieces of clothing that you wear on your hands, with a separate part for each finger; <i>a pair of gloves</i>
hat	[hæt]	a thing that you wear on your head
high heels	[haɪ hɪlz]	women's shoes that have high heels (= raised parts on the bottom of the shoe)
hood	[hʊd]	the part of a coat that you can pull up to cover your head

jacket	[dʒækɪt]	a short coat with long sleeves
jeans	[dʒiːnz]	pants that are made of strong cotton cloth
jumper (BRIT)		see sweater
kaftan	[kæftæn]	a long loose piece of clothing with long sleeves, that some men in Arab countries wear
kimono	[kɪmɒnə,-noʊ]	a long piece of clothing shaped like a coat, that some Japanese people wear
knickers (BRIT)		see panties
nightdress	[naɪtdres]	a loose dress that a woman or girl wears in bed
pajamas	[pə'dʒɑːməz]	loose pants and a top that people wear in bed (<i>In British English, use pyjamas</i>)
panties	[pæntɪz]	a piece of underwear for women and girls, that covers the area between the waist and the legs (<i>In British English, use knickers</i>)
pants	[pænts]	a piece of clothing that covers

the body from the waist downwards, and that covers each leg separately; *a pair of pants* (In British English, use **trousers**)

pantyhose [pæntihouz] a piece of tight clothing that covers the lower body, worn by women, girls, and dancers; *a pair of pantyhose*

EXAMPLES

People were standing outside in their pajamas.

pattern [pætərn] an arrangement of lines or shapes that form a design

pocket [pɒkɪt] a part of a piece of clothing that you can put things in

pyjamas
(BRIT) *see **pajamas***

sandals [sændəlz] light shoes that you wear in warm weather

sari [sqri] a piece of clothing that some Indian women wear, consisting

		of a long piece of material that you wrap around your body
scarf	[skɑːrf]	a piece of cloth that you wear around your
(PL) scarves	[skɑːrvz]	neck or head
shirt	[ʃɜːrt]	a piece of clothing with a collar and buttons, that you wear on the top part of your body
shoelaces	[ʃuleɪsɪz]	thin pieces of material that go through holes in shoes in order to make the shoes tighter
shoes	[ʃuːz]	things made of leather or another strong material, that you wear on your feet over socks
shorts	[ʃɔːrts]	pants with very short legs; <i>a pair of shorts</i>
size	[saɪz]	one of a series of particular measurements for clothes and shoes
skirt	[skɜːrt]	a piece of clothing for women and girls that hangs down from

		the waist and covers part of the legs
sleeve	[sl <u>ɪ</u> v]	one of the two parts of a piece of clothing that covers your arms
slippers	[sl <u>ɪ</u> pərz]	loose, soft shoes that you wear indoors
sneakers	[sn <u>ɪ</u> kərz]	shoes that people wear for running and other sports, or with informal clothes (<i>In British English, use trainers</i>)

EXAMPLES

He put on a pair of sandals and walked down to the beach.

I take size 38 in shoes.

I need a new pair of shoes.

What size do you wear?

What shoe size are you?

socks	[sp <u>ɪ</u> ks]	pieces of clothing that cover your feet and ankles and that you wear inside shoes
suit	[s <u>u</u> ɪt]	a jacket and pants or a jacket and skirt that are both made

		from the same cloth
sweater	[swɛtər]	a warm piece of clothing that covers the top part of your body (<i>In British English, use jumper</i>)
swimming trunks	[swɪmɪŋ trʌŋks]	shorts that men and boys wear when they go swimming
swimsuit (<i>BRIT</i>)		see bathing suit
tie	[taɪ]	a long narrow piece of cloth that you wear around your neck with a shirt
tights	[taɪts]	a piece of tight clothing that covers the lower body, worn by women, girls, and dancers; <i>a pair of tights</i>
top	[tɒp]	[<i>INFORMAL</i>] a piece of clothing, for example a blouse or a shirt, that you wear on the upper part of your body
trainers (<i>BRIT</i>)		see sneakers
trousers (<i>BRIT</i>)		see pants
T-shirt	[tɪ ʃɜrt]	a cotton shirt with short sleeves

		and no collar or buttons
turban	[tɜːrbən]	a long piece of cloth that Sikh, Hindu, and Muslim men wrap around their heads
underpants	[ʌndərpænts]	underwear, that covers the area between the waist and the top of the legs
underwear	[ʌndərwɛər]	clothes that you wear next to your skin, under your other clothes
uniform	[yʊnɪfɔːrm]	the special clothes that some people wear to work, and that some children wear at school
vest	[vɛst]	a piece of clothing without sleeves that people usually wear over a shirt (<i>In British English, use waistcoat</i>)
waistcoat (BRIT)		see vest

EXAMPLES

He was wearing a dark business suit.

zip (*BRIT*)

see **zipper**

zipper [zɪpər]

a long metal or plastic object with two rows of teeth that join together, and a small part that you pull in order to open and close clothes or bags (*In British English, use zip*)

VERBS

dress up

to put on different clothes in order to look like someone else, for fun

fit [fɪt]

to be the right size for you

get changed

to take off some or all of your clothes, and put on different clothes

get dressed

to put on your clothes

get undressed

to take off your clothes

**put something
on**

to put a piece of clothing onto your body

suit [suɪt]

to make you look attractive

take

to take a piece of clothing off

something off

your body

wear

[wɛər]

to have something such as clothes, shoes, or jewelry on your body

zip

[zɪp]

to fasten something such as a piece of clothing using its zipper

EXAMPLES

My son dressed up as a cowboy for the fancy dress party.

The dress fit me perfectly.

When I get home from school I get changed.

In the morning I get dressed.

Sarah got dressed quickly and went to work.

In the evening I get undressed.

He put his shirt on.

That suits you.

Jason took off his jacket and loosened his tie.

You need to wear warm clothes when you go out today.

ADJECTIVES

casual

[kæʒuəl]

worn at home or on vacation, and not at work or on formal occasions

checked

see **checkered**

(BRIT)

checkered	[tʃɛkəd]	with a pattern of small squares, usually of two colors (<i>In British English, use checked</i>)
fashionable	[fæʃənəbəl]	1 popular at a particular time; <i>fashionable clothes</i> 2 wearing fashionable clothes; <i>a fashionable woman</i>
formal	[fɔːrməl]	formal clothes are worn on serious or official occasions
long	[lɔːŋ]	measuring a great distance from one end to the other; <i>a long coat</i>
old-fashioned	[əʊld fæʃənd]	no longer fashionable or modern
short	[ʃɔːrt]	measuring only a small amount from one end to the other; <i>a short skirt</i>
smart	[smɑːt]	1 clean and neat, and wearing attractive clothes; <i>You look smart.</i> 2 neat and attractive, and worn at work or on slightly formal occasions; <i>a smart suit</i>
spotted	[spɒtɪd]	having a pattern of spots (=

small round colored areas); *a spotted handkerchief*

striped [straɪpt] having a pattern of stripes (= long lines of different colors); *a pair of striped pajamas*

tight [taɪt] small, and fitting closely to your body; *a tight skirt*

trendy [trɛndi] fashionable and modern

EXAMPLES

He wore formal evening dress to the dinner.

That's very smart.

college and university

NOUNS

art school	[ɑrt skul]	a college where people study subjects such as painting and photography
arts	[ɑrts]	subjects such as history, literature, and language, which are not scientific
assignment	[əsaɪnmənt]	a task that you are given to do as part of your studies
bachelor's degree	[bætʃələrz dɪɡri]	a first university degree that usually lasts four years
campus	[kæmpəs]	an area of land that contains the main buildings of a university or college
college	[kɒlɪdʒ]	same as university
course	[kɔrs]	a series of lessons on a particular subject; <i>complete a course</i>
coursework	[kɔrswɜrk]	work that students do during a

		course, rather than in exams
degree	[dɪgrɪ]	<p>1 a course of study that you do at a university or college; <i>do a degree</i></p> <p>2 the qualification that you get when you have passed this course; <i>have a degree</i></p>
department	[dɪpɑrtmənt]	one of the sections in a university or college; <i>the English Literature department</i>
discussion section	[dɪskʌʃən sekʃən]	a class at a college or university in which the teacher or TA and a small group of students discuss a topic (<i>In British English, use tutorial</i>)
diploma	[dɪpləʊmə]	the qualification that you get when you have completed a course of study at a university or college; <i>have a diploma</i>
distance learning	[dɪstəns lɜrnɪŋ]	a system of education in which people study at home

EXAMPLES

We have to do written assignments as well as fieldwork.

Cars are not allowed on campus.

Joanna is doing business studies at a local college.

I did a course in computing.

He was awarded a diploma in social work.

dorms	[dɔːrmz]	buildings or rooms where students live (<i>In British English, use student accommodation</i>)
essay	[ˈɛseɪ]	a short piece of writing on a subject
exam	[ɪgzæm]	a formal test you take to show your knowledge of a subject
examination	[ɪgzæmɪneɪʃən]	[FORMAL] same as exam
faculty	[fækəlti]	a group of related departments in a university; <i>the Faculty of Arts</i>
fieldwork	[fɪldwɜːrk]	the activity of gathering information about something in the real world, rather than studying it in a classroom
finals	[faɪnəlz]	the tests students take at the end of a university or college course; <i>take your finals</i>

graduate	[grædʒuɪt]	a student who has completed a course at a college or university
graduation	[grædʒueɪʃən]	a special ceremony for students when they have completed their studies at a university or college
grant	[grænt]	an amount of money given to a person or to an organization for a special purpose
halls of residence (BRIT)		see residence hall
honors degree	[ˈɒnəz dɪɡri]	a type of university degree which is of a higher standard than an ordinary degree (<i>In British English, use honours degree</i>)
honours degree (BRIT)		see honors degree
invigilator (BRIT)		see proctor
law school	[lɔː skul]	a school people go to after college where they study to become lawyers

lecture	[lɛktʃər]	a talk that someone gives in order to teach people about a particular subject
lecturer	[lɛktʃərə]	a teacher at a university or college
major	[meɪdʒər]	the main subject that someone is studying

EXAMPLES

We had to write an essay on Shakespeare.

He is a lecturer in the Geography department of Moscow University.

master's degree	[mæstəz dɪgri]	a second university degree, that usually lasts one or two years
medical school	[mɛdɪkəl skul]	a college where people study to become doctors and nurses
natural sciences	[nætʃərəl saɪənsɪz, nætʃrəl -]	subjects such as physics, biology, and chemistry, that are concerned with the physical world
PhD	[pi eɪtʃ di]	1 short for “Doctor of Philosophy”: the highest degree in a particular subject; <i>working</i>

		<i>on a PhD</i>
		2 the qualification that you get when you have passed this degree; <i>have a PhD</i>
plagiarism	[plɛɪdʒərɪzəm]	the practice of copying someone else's work and pretending that you did the work
proctor	[prɒktər]	someone who checks that an exam starts and finishes at the correct time, and that there is no cheating (<i>In British English, use invigilator</i>)
prospectus	[prɒspɛktəs]	a document that gives details about a college or university and the courses it provides
reading list	[rɪdɪŋ list]	a document that a lecturer gives to students, with suggestions for books that they should read for a particular class
research	[rɪsɜːrtʃ, rɪsɜːrtʃ]	work that involves studying something and trying to discover facts about it
residence hall	[rɛzɪdəns hɔːl]	buildings with rooms or suites,

usually built by universities or colleges, in which students live during the term (*In British English, use halls of residence*)

scholarship [skɒləʃɪp]

an amount of money that is given to someone who has achieved good results, so that they can continue studying

EXAMPLES

He has a master's degree in Business Administration.

Marc has a PhD in Linguistics.

Phuong was awarded a scholarship to study business management at the University of Luton.

school [sku:l]

1 a department of a university or college; *the School of Humanities*

2 same as **university**

semester [sɪmɛstə]

half of a college or university year

seminar [sɛmɪnɑ]

a class at a college or university in which the teacher and a

		small group of students discuss a topic
social sciences	[səʊʃəl saɪənsɪz]	subjects such as sociology and politics, that are concerned with society
student	[stjuːdɪnt]	a person who is studying at a university or a college
student accommodation (BRIT)		see dorms
student loan	[stjuːdɪnt ləʊn]	an amount of money that students can borrow from the government; <i>apply for a student loan</i>
student union	[stjuːdɪnt yuːnɪən]	1 an organization in a university or college that helps students 2 a building where this organization has an office, and where there is usually a shop and a coffee bar
syllabus	[sɪləbəs]	a list of subjects that are covered in a university or

		college course
TA	[tɪ eɪ]	short for “teaching assistant”: a postgraduate student who teaches seminars or leads discussion sections for lecture classes at a college or university
technical college	[tɛknɪkəl kɒlɪdʒ]	a college where you can study practical subjects, often in order to do a particular job
term	[tɜrm]	one of the periods of time that a college or university year is divided into
test	[tɛst]	an exam that you take to show your knowledge of a subject; <i>take a test</i>

EXAMPLES

Please read this chapter before next week’s seminar.

thesis	[θɪsɪs]	a long piece of writing based on your own
(PL) theses	[θɪsɪs]	ideas and research, that you do as part of a degree

tuition fees [tuɪʃən fɪz] the money that you pay to be taught at a university or college

tutor [tʊtər] a private teacher who meets with students outside of normal classes to help them keep up with the materials covered in class

tutorial (*BRIT*) see [discussion section](#)

undergraduate [ʌndəgrædʒuɪt] a university or college student who has not yet attained their Bachelor's degree

university [yʊnɪvɜːrsɪti] a place where you can study for a degree, and where people do academic research

viva [vɪvə] a university examination in which a student answers questions by speaking rather than writing

vocational course [vəʊkeɪʃənəl kɔːrs] a course that someone does in order to do a particular job

VERBS

enrol [ɪnroʊl] to officially join a class

graduate	[grædʒuət]	to complete your studies at college or university
invigilate (BRIT)		see proctor
proctor	[prɒktər]	to check that an exam starts and finishes at the correct time, and that no-one cheats (<i>In British English, use invigilate</i>)
register	[rɛdʒɪstər]	to put your name on an official list, in order to be able to take a particular class

EXAMPLES

He was awarded his PhD for a thesis on industrial robots.

The government are planning to increase tuition fees.

She went to a university where she got a BA and then an MA.

She graduated with a degree in English and Drama from Northwestern University.

What do you want to do after you graduate?

study	[stʌdi]	to spend time learning about a particular subject
work	[wɜrk]	to do an activity that uses a lot of your time or effort

ADJECTIVES

academic	[ækədɛmɪk]	relating to the work done in universities and colleges; <i>an academic journal</i>
full-time	[fʊl taɪm]	relating to a course that takes up the whole of each normal working week; <i>a full-time program; a full-time student</i>
part-time	[pɑrt taɪm]	relating to a course that takes up only part of each day or week; <i>a part-time course; a part-time student</i>

EXAMPLES

She spends most of her time studying.

He studied History and Geography at college.

Their academic standards are high.

colors

NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

beige	[beɪʒ]	(having) a pale brown color
black	[blæk]	1 (having) the color of the sky at night 2 black coffee or tea has no milk in it
blue	[blu]	(having) the color of the sky on a sunny day
brown	[braʊn]	(having) the color of earth or wood
cream	[kri:m]	(having) a yellowish-white color
gold	[gəʊld]	(having) a bright yellow color that is often shiny
green	[grɪn]	(having) the color of grass or leaves
gray	[greɪ]	(having) the color of ashes, or clouds on a rainy day (<i>In British English, use grey</i>)

grey (<i>BRIT</i>)		see gray
navy blue	[nɛɪvi blɪ]	(having) a very dark blue color; <i>a navy blue suit</i>
orange	[ɔrɪndʒ]	(having) a color between red and yellow
pink	[pɪŋk]	(having) a color between red and white
purple	[pɜrpəl]	(having) a color between red and blue
red	[rɛd]	(having) the color of blood or of a tomato
silver	[sɪlvər]	(having) a shiny and pale grey color
turquoise	[tɜrkwɔɪz]	(having) a light greenish-blue color
white	[waɪt]	1 (having) the color of snow or milk 2 white wine is a pale-yellow color 3 white coffee or tea has milk in it
yellow	[jɛləʊ]	(having) the color of lemons or

butter

EXAMPLES

Blue suits you.

“What color are your eyes?” – “Blue.”

I bought some blue shoes.

“What color is your hair?” – “Brown.”

The room is decorated in soft browns and creams.

She has green eyes.

Do you have this t-shirt in green?

“What’s your favorite color?” – “Red.”

You look good in white.

ADJECTIVES

bright	[br <u>ai</u> t]	strong and noticeable in color; <i>a bright red dress</i>
dark	[d <u>ar</u> k]	close to black, or containing some black; <i>dark brown hair</i>
light	[l <u>ai</u> t]	pale in color; <i>light brown hair</i>
pale	[p <u>ei</u> l]	not strong or bright in color; <i>pale blue eyes</i>
rich	[r <u>i</u> tʃ]	dark in color and pleasant to look at
soft	[s <u>o</u> ft]	not bright, and pleasant to look

at

VERBS

blush	[blʌʃ]	to become red in the face because you are ashamed or embarrassed
change color		to become a different color (<i>In British English, use change colour</i>)
change colour (BRIT)		see change color
go red		to become red in the face because you are embarrassed or angry
paint	[peɪnt]	to cover a wall or an object with paint; <i>paint something blue</i>

PHRASES

a black eye	a dark area of skin around your eye where someone has hit you
--------------------	---

EXAMPLES

She's wearing a light blue t-shirt.

The leaves on the trees are changing color.

Mom went red in the face with anger.

He had a black eye, and several cuts on his face.

computers and the internet

NOUNS

attachment	[ətætʃmənt]	a file that you send with an email
blog	[blɒg]	a website that describes the daily life and thoughts of the person who writes it
broadband	[brɔːdbænd]	a very fast method of sending a lot of information at the same time over the internet
browser	[braʊzər]	a piece of software that allows you to search for information on the internet
bug	[bʌg]	a mistake in a computer program
CD	[si di]	short for “compact disc”: a disc for storing music or computer information
CD-ROM	[si di rɒm]	a CD that stores information that you can read using a

		computer
chat	[tʃæt]	a way of communicating with friends by exchanging written messages using the internet; <i>internet chat</i>
computer	[kəmpyʊtər]	an electronic machine that stores and deals with large amounts of information; <i>a computer game; a computer system</i>
connection	[kənekʃən]	a link between a computer and a network; <i>an internet connection</i>
cursor	[kɜrsər]	a small line on a computer screen that shows where you are working
data	[deɪtə, dætə]	information that can be used by a computer program
database	[deɪtəbeɪs, dætə-]	a collection of information on a computer that is stored in such a way that you can use it and add to it easily

EXAMPLES

Many internet users now have a broadband connection at home.

You need an up-to-date web browser.

There is a bug in the software.

A CD-ROM can hold huge amounts of data.

desktop	[dɛsktɒp]	the images that you see on a computer screen when the computer is ready to use
disk	[dɪsk]	a flat metal object that stores information and can be put into a computer
disk drive	[dɪsk draɪv]	the part of a computer that holds a disk
document	[ˈdɒkjəmənt]	a piece of text that is stored on a computer
email	[ɪmeɪl]	1 short for “electronic mail”: a system of sending written messages from one computer to another; <i>send a file by email</i> 2 a written message that you send by computer; <i>send an email</i>
email address	[ɪmeɪl ədres]	a combination of letters and symbols that identifies where emails are sent
file	[faɪl]	a collection of information that

		you keep on your computer
folder	[f <u>o</u> ldər]	a group of files that are stored together on a computer
font	[f <u>o</u> nt]	a set of letters of the same style and size
hacker	[hæ <u>k</u> ər]	a person who illegally gets access to another computer
hard disk	[h <u>ɑ</u> rd dɪsk]	the part inside a computer where data and programs are stored
hard drive	[h <u>ɑ</u> rd draɪv]	the part inside a computer that contains the hard disk
hardware	[h <u>ɑ</u> rdwɛr]	things in computer systems such as the computer, the keyboard and the screen, rather than the programs
home page	[h <u>o</u> ʊm peɪdʒ]	the main page of a website
I.T.	[aɪ 'ti:]	short for “information technology”: the study and practice of using computers
icon	[aɪ <u>k</u> ɒn]	a picture on a computer screen that you can choose, in order to

open a particular program

EXAMPLES

You can rearrange the icons on your desktop.

You can cut and paste whole paragraphs from one document to another.

Could you email David Ferguson and arrange a meeting?

The company needs people with I.T. skills.

inbox	[ɪnbɒks]	the place where your computer stores emails that people have sent to you
ink cartridge	[ɪŋk kɑrtrɪdʒ]	a container of ink that you put in a printer
the internet	[ðɪ ɪntənet]	the network that connects computers all over the world
italics	[ɪtælɪks]	letters and numbers that slope to the right; <i>This sentence is in italics.</i>
key	[ki]	one of the buttons that you press in order to operate a computer
keyboard	[kɪbɔrd]	the set of keys that you press in order to operate a computer
laptop	[læptɒp]	a small computer that you can

		carry with you
memory	[mɛməri]	the part of a computer where it stores information
memory stick	[mɛməri stɪk]	a small object for storing information that you can carry with you and use in different computers
menu	[mɛnyu]	a list of choices on a computer screen, showing things that you can do using a particular program; <i>a drop-down menu</i>
modem	[məʊdəm, -dəm]	a piece of equipment that uses a telephone line to connect computers
monitor	[mɒnɪtər]	the part of a computer that contains the screen
mouse	[maʊs]	an object that you use to do things on a computer without using the keyboard
mouse mat (BRIT)		see mouse pad
mouse pad	[maʊs pæd]	a flat piece of plastic that you rest a mouse on (<i>In British</i>

English, use mouse mat)

network	[nɛtwɜrk]	a system of connected computers
operating system	[ɒpəreɪtɪŋ sistəm]	a system in a computer that controls all system the other programs

EXAMPLES

I had 50 emails in my inbox.

I found all the information I needed on the internet.

password	[pæswɜrd]	a secret word or phrase that allows you to use a computer system
PC	[pi si]	short for “personal computer”: a computer that people use at school, at home or in an office
printer	[prɪntər]	a machine for printing copies of computer documents on paper
printout	[prɪntaʊt]	a piece of paper with information from a computer printed on it
program	[prɒgræm, -	a set of instructions that a

	grəm]	computer uses to do a particular task
screen	[skrɪn]	a flat surface on a computer where you see pictures or words
social networking	[səʊʃəl nɛtwɜːrkɪŋ]	the activity of contacting friends and making new friends on particular websites
software	[sɔftwɛər]	computer programs
spam	[spæm]	advertising messages that are sent automatically by email to large numbers of people
spreadsheet	[sprɛdʃɪt]	a program that deals with numbers, and is mainly used for financial planning
USB	[ju ɛs bi]	short for “Universal Serial Bus”: a way of connecting equipment to a computer; <i>a USB port</i>
username	[juːzərneɪm]	the name that you type onto your screen each time you open a particular program or website
virus	[vaɪrəs]	a program that enters a computer system and changes or

destroys the information that is there

EXAMPLES

The printer plugs into the computer's USB port.

I clicked the mouse and a message appeared on the screen.

Have you used a social networking site such as Myspace or Facebook?

The software allows you to browse the internet on your mobile phone.

You should protect your computer against viruses.

the web	[ðə wɛb]	a computer system that helps you find information. You can use it anywhere in the world.
web address	[wɛb ɒdres]	the location of a website on the internet, for example, http://www.harpercollins.com
webcam	[wɛbkæm]	a camera on a computer that produces images that can be seen on a website
website	[wɛbsaɪt]	a set of information on the internet about a particular subject
window	[wɪndəʊ]	one of the work areas that a screen can be divided into

VERBS

back something up		to make a copy of a computer file that you can use if the original file is lost; <i>back up a file</i>
boot up a computer		to make a computer start working
browse	[brəʊz]	to search for information on the internet; <i>browse the internet</i>
click	[kɪk]	to press one of the buttons on a mouse in order to make something happen on the screen; <i>click on a link</i>
copy	[kɒpi]	to make a new version of a file or disk that is exactly the same as the old one; <i>copy a file</i>
crash	[kræʃ]	used for saying that a computer or a program suddenly stops working; <i>The computer crashed.</i>
cut and paste		to move words or pictures on a computer from one place to another place
delete	[dɪlɪt]	1 to remove a file or document

from a computer; *delete a file*
2 to remove text from a
document; *delete*
a paragraph

EXAMPLES

Go over to your computer and boot it up.

My computer crashed for the second time that day.

The report was too long so I deleted a few paragraphs.

download	[daʊnləʊd]	to copy a file, a program, or other information from a bigger computer, a network or the internet to your own computer
email	[iːmeɪl]	to send a message from one computer to another; <i>email someone</i>
format	[fɔːrmæt]	to change the arrangement of the text of a document
key something in		to put information into a computer using the keyboard; <i>key in data</i>

log in		to type your username and password so that you can start using a computer or website
log off		to stop using a computer or website by clicking on an instruction
print	[pɹɪnt]	to use a machine to produce a copy of a computer file on paper; <i>print ten copies of a document</i>
program	[prougræm, -grəm]	to give a computer a set of instructions so that it can do a particular task; <i>program a computer</i>
save	[seɪv]	to give a computer an instruction to store some information; <i>save your work</i>
scroll	[skroul]	to move the text on a computer screen up or down to find the information that you need; <i>scroll down the page</i>
zip	[zɪp]	to make a file smaller so that you can send it to someone using the internet

EXAMPLES

You can download software from this website.

She turned on her computer and logged in.

This is how to zip files so that you can send them via email.

ADJECTIVES

bold	[b <u>o</u> ld]	letters and numbers that are bold are thicker and darker than ordinary ones; <i>bold capitals</i>
desktop	[d <u>ɛ</u> skt <u>ɒ</u> p]	of a convenient size for using on a desk or a table; <i>a desktop computer</i>
electronic	[ɪl <u>ɛ</u> kt <u>r</u> ɒn <u>ɪ</u> k, i-]	using electricity and small electrical parts
offline	[<u>p</u> fl <u>a</u> ɪn]	not connected to the internet; <i>The computer is offline.</i>
online	[<u>p</u> nl <u>a</u> ɪn]	1 available on the internet; <i>an online store</i> 2 connected to the internet; <i>people who are online</i>
portable	[p <u>ɔ</u> rt <u>ə</u> b <u>ə</u> l]	designed to be carried or moved around

cooking

NOUNS

barbecue	[bɑːrbɪkyu]	a piece of equipment that you use for cooking outdoors
blender	[blɛndər]	a piece of electrical equipment for mixing liquids and soft foods together or for turning fruit or vegetables into liquid
bottle opener	[bɒtəl ʊpənər]	a metal tool for removing tops from bottles
broiler	[brɔɪlər]	the part of a oven where you cook food under strong heat (<i>In British English, use grill</i>)
cake tin	[keɪk tɪn]	1 a metal container that you use for baking a cake 2 a metal container that you put a cake in to keep it fresh
can opener	[kæn ʊpənər]	a tool for opening tins of food (<i>In British English, use tin opener</i>)

chopping board	[tʃɒpɪŋ bɔːrd]	a flat piece of wood or plastic that you chop meat or vegetables on
coffee maker	[kɒfi meɪkər]	a machine for making coffee
cook	[kʊk]	someone who prepares and cooks food
cooker (BRIT)		see stove
corkscrew	[kɔːrkskruː]	a tool for pulling corks out of bottles
dish	[dɪʃ]	a wide shallow container with no cover, that you use for cooking and serving food
food processor	[fʊd prəʊsesər]	a piece of electrical equipment for mixing or chopping food, or for turning food into liquid
fork	[fɔːk]	a tool with a handle and three or four long metal points at the end, that you use for eating and cooking
frying pan	[fraɪɪŋ pæn]	a flat metal pan with a long handle, that you use for frying food

grater [grɛtər] a tool with a rough surface, that you use for cutting food into very small pieces

EXAMPLES

My mom is a good cook.

grill [grɪl] 1 a flat frame of metal bars that you can use to cook food over a fire

2 (BRIT) see **broiler**

hob (BRIT) see **stove top**

kettle [kɛtəl] a metal container with a lid and a handle, that you use for boiling water

knife [naɪf] a tool with a handle and a sharp flat piece of metal, that you use for eating and cooking; *a carving knife; a bread knife*

ladle [leɪdəl] a large, round, deep spoon with a long handle, that you use for serving soup

microwave [maɪkrouweɪv] an oven that cooks food very

		quickly using electric waves
mixing bowl	[mɪksɪŋ baʊl]	a large bowl that you use for mixing ingredients
oven	[ʌvən]	a piece of equipment for cooking that is like a large metal box with a door
pan	[pæn]	a round metal container with a long handle, that you use for cooking food
peeler	[pi:lər]	a tool for removing the skin from fruit and vegetables; <i>a potato peeler</i>
pot	[pɒt]	a deep round container that you use for cooking soup and other food
recipe	[rɛsɪpi]	a set of instructions telling you how to cook something
rolling pin	[rɒlɪŋ pɪn]	a long wooden tool that you roll over dough in order to make it flat
saucepan	[sɔ:spæn]	a deep metal cooking pot, usually with a long handle and a lid

scale [skeɪl] a piece of equipment that you use for weighing food (*In British English, use **scales***)

scales (BRIT) see **scale**

EXAMPLES

Put the dish in the oven for 40 minutes.

No salt is required in this recipe.

sieve [sɪv] a tool with a fine metal net, that you use for separating food from liquids

spatula [spætʃələ] a tool like a knife with a wide flat blade, that you use for lifting hot food

spoon [spuːn] a tool with a handle and a part like a shallow bowl, that you use for eating and cooking; *a wooden spoon*

stove [stəʊv] a piece of kitchen equipment that you use for cooking food (*In British English, use **cooker***)

stove top [stəʊv tɒp] the top part of a cooker where

you put pans (*In British English, use **hob***)

toaster [toustər]

a piece of electrical equipment that you use to heat bread

timer [taimər]

a piece of equipment that you use for measuring how long you need to cook something for

tin opener
(BRIT)

see **can opener**

tongs [tɒŋz]

a tool consisting of two connected pieces of metal, that you use for picking up food

whisk [wɪsk]

a tool for stirring eggs or cream very fast; *an electric whisk; a hand whisk*

VERBS

bake [bek]

to cook food in an oven without extra oil or liquid

beat [bit]

to mix food quickly with a spoon or a fork; *beat an egg*

boil [boɪl]

1 to heat water until bubbles appear and the water starts to

change into steam; *boil water*
2 to cook food in boiling water;
boil potatoes

EXAMPLES

We bought a new stove.

Put the pan on the stove top, add flour, and cook for one minute.

Beat the eggs with a wooden spoon.

Gradually bring the sauce to the boil.

bring something		to heat liquid until it boils to the boil
broil	[brɔɪl]	to cook food under a broiler (<i>In British English, use grill</i>)
carve	[kɑrv]	to cut slices from meat; <i>carve the meat</i>
chop	[tʃɒp]	to cut something into pieces with a knife chop the vegetables
cook	[kʊk]	to prepare and heat food
fry	[fraɪ]	to cook food in hot fat or oil
grill		1 to cook food on metal bars above a fire or barbecue or

under a grill

2 (BRIT) see **broil**

mash	[mæʃ]	to press food to make it soft
melt	[mɛlt]	to heat a solid food so that it becomes a liquid
peel	[pi:l]	to remove the skin of fruit or vegetables
prepare	[pri:pɛər]	to get food ready
roast	[rəʊst]	to cook meat or other food in an oven or over a fire
serve	[sɜ:rv]	to give people food and drinks
slice	[slaɪs]	to cut food into thin pieces; <i>slice the mushrooms</i>
stir	[stɜ:r]	to mix a liquid in a container using a spoon
weigh	[weɪ]	to measure how heavy something is
whisk	[wɪsk]	to stir eggs or cream very fast

EXAMPLES

Carve the beef into thin slices.

Chop the butter into small pieces.

Mash the bananas with a fork.
Top with whipped cream and serve.
Serve the soup with crusty bread.
Helen sliced the cake.

ADJECTIVES

baked	[beɪkt]	cooked in the oven without extra oil or liquid; <i>a baked potato</i>
boiled	[bɔɪld]	cooked in boiling water; <i>a boiled egg</i>
chopped	[tʃɒpt]	cut into pieces with a knife; <i>a tin of chopped tomatoes</i>
fried	[fraɪd]	cooked in hot fat or oil; <i>fried rice</i>
grated	[ɡreɪtɪd]	cut into very small pieces using a grater; <i>grated cheese</i>
mashed	[mæʃt]	pressed until soft; <i>mashed potatoes</i>
medium	[mɪdiəm]	used for describing meat that is cooked so that the inside is still slightly pink
poached	[pɔʊtʃt]	cooked gently in boiling liquid; <i>a poached egg</i>

rare	[rɛər]	used for describing meat that is cooked very lightly so that the inside is still red
roast	[rəʊst]	cooked in the oven or over a fire; <i>roast beef</i>
scrambled	[skræmbəld]	used to describe eggs that have been mixed together and heated in a pan
steamed	[stiːmd]	cooked in steam rather than water; <i>steamed vegetables</i>
well done	[wɛl dʌn]	if meat is well done, it has been cooked thoroughly

EXAMPLES

I'd like my steak well done.

countryside

NOUNS

agriculture	[əgrɪkʌltʃər]	the business or activity of taking care of crops and farm animals
barn	[bɑːn]	a building on a farm where animals and crops are kept
bulldozer	[bʊldoʊzər]	a large vehicle that is used for moving large amounts of earth
cave	[keɪv]	a large hole in the side of a hill or under the ground; <i>an underground cave</i>
cliff	[klɪf]	a high area of land with a very steep side next to water; <i>walk along the cliffs</i>
combine harvester	[kɒmbaɪn hɑːvɪstər]	a large machine that is used on farms to cut, sort, and clean grain
country	[kʌntri]	same as countryside
countryside	[kʌntrisaɪd]	land that is away from cities and towns; <i>We live in the country.</i>

crop	[krɒp]	a plant that people grow for food; <i>plant</i> <i>a crop</i>
ditch	[dɪtʃ]	a deep, long, narrow hole that carries water away from a road or a field
estate	[ɪsteɪt]	a large house in a large area of land in the country
farm	[fɑːm]	an area of land and buildings where people grow crops and keep animals
farmer	[fɑːmə]	a person who owns or works on a farm
farmyard	[fɑːmyɑːd]	an area near a farmhouse that is enclosed by walls or buildings; <i>farmyard animals</i>
fence	[fɛns]	a wooden or metal wall around a piece of land
field	[fiːld]	a piece of land where crops are grown, or where animals are kept

EXAMPLES

Lisa and Andrew live in the countryside.
Both of the boys work on the farm.
There is not enough good farm land here.
We drove past fields of sunflowers.

fishing	[fɪʃɪŋ]	the sport or business of catching fish
forest	[fɒrɪst]	a large area where trees grow close together
gate	[geɪt]	a structure like a door that you use to enter a field; <i>close the gate</i>
ground	[graʊnd]	the soil on the Earth's surface in which you can grow plants
harvest	[hɑːrvɪst]	1 the activity of collecting a crop, or the time when this is done 2 the amount of a crop that is collected; <i>a good/poor harvest</i>
hay	[heɪ]	grass that has been cut and dried so that it can be used for feeding animals
hedge	[hedʒ]	a row of small trees growing close together around a field

hike	[h <u>ai</u> k]	a long walk, especially in the countryside
hill	[h <u>il</u>]	an area of land that is higher than the land around it; <i>a steep hill; climb a hill</i>
hunt	[h <u>ʌ</u> nt]	an organized event when a group of people follow and kill wild animals as a sport; <i>go on a hunt</i>
hunter	[h <u>ʌ</u> ntər]	a person who hunts wild animals for food or as a sport
lake	[l <u>ei</u> k]	a large area of water with land around it
land	[l <u>æ</u> nd]	an area of ground that is used for farming
market	[m <u>ɑ</u> rkɪt]	a place where people buy and sell products
marsh	[m <u>ɑ</u> rʃ]	a soft, wet area of land
meadow	[m <u>ɛ</u> dəʊ]	a field that has grass and flowers growing in it
moor	[m <u>u</u> ər]	an area of high open ground covered mainly with rough grass

and heather

mountain [maʊntən] a very high area of land with steep sides; *climb a mountain*

EXAMPLES

I walked through the gate and into the field.

The women prepare the ground for planting.

Mt. McKinley is the highest mountain in North America.

mud [mʌd] a sticky mixture of earth and water

path [pæθ] a long, narrow piece of ground that people walk along

picnic [pɪknɪk] an occasion when you eat a meal outdoors, usually in a park or a forest, or at the beach

plough [pləʊ] a large farming tool that is pulled across the soil to turn it over, usually before seeds are planted

pond [pɒnd] a small area of water

produce [prɒdʊs] food that you grow on a farm to sell

quarry	[kwɔ̃ri]	a place where stone or minerals are dug out of the ground
rain boots	[reɪn buts]	long rubber boots that you wear to keep your feet dry (<i>In British English, use wellingtons</i>)
river	[rɪvər]	a long line of water that flows into a sea; <i>a river bank</i>
rock	[rɒk]	1 the hard substance that is in the ground and in mountains 2 a large piece of rock
ruins	[ruɪnz]	the parts of a building that remain after something destroys the rest
scarecrow	[skærkrou]	an object, in the shape of a person, that stands in a field where crops are growing in order to frighten birds away
scenery	[sɪnəri]	the land, water, or plants that you can see around you in a country area
soil	[sɔɪl]	the substance on the surface of the Earth in which plants grow

EXAMPLES

We went for a picnic.

The restaurant uses as much local produce as possible.

We tried to dig, but the ground was solid rock.

Maria sat on a rock and looked out across the sea.

The soil here is good for growing vegetables.

spring	[sprɪŋ]	a place where water comes up through the ground; <i>an underground spring</i>
stable	[steɪbəl]	a building in which horses are kept
stick	[stɪk]	a thin branch from a tree
stone	[stəʊn]	1 a hard solid substance that is found in the ground and is often used for building 2 a small piece of rock that is found on the ground
stream	[stri:m]	a small narrow river
track	[træk]	1 a rough road or path; <i>a muddy</i>

		<i>track</i>
		2 the marks that an animal leaves on the ground; <i>animal tracks</i>
tractor	[træk̩tər]	a vehicle that a farmer uses to pull farm machinery; <i>drive a tractor</i>
valley	[væli]	a low area of land between hills; <i>a steep mountain valley</i>
view	[vyu]	everything that you can see from a place
village	[vɪlɪdʒ]	a very small town in the countryside
walk	[wɔ̩k]	a trip that you make by walking, usually for pleasure; <i>go for a walk</i>
waterfall	[wɔ̩tərfɔ̩l]	a place where water flows over the edge of a steep part of hills or mountains, and falls into a pool below
well	[wɛl]	a deep hole in the ground from which people take water or oil
wellingtons		see rain boots

(BRIT)

windmill [wɪndmɪl] a building with long, flat parts on the outside that turn as the wind blows to make machinery move inside

wood [wʊd] 1 the hard material that trees are made of
2 a large area of trees growing near each other; *in the woods*

EXAMPLES

She could feel cool, smooth stone beneath her feet.

Loose stones on the ground made walking difficult.

Zak found fresh bear tracks in the snow.

The view from the top of the hill was magnificent.

VERBS

climb [klaɪm] to move towards the top of something; *climb a hill; climb to the top*

go camping to stay in a tent or a trailer for a short time

harvest [hɑrvɪst] to collect a farm crop; *harvest*

crops

hike	[h <u>a</u> ɪk]	to go for a long walk
hunt	[h <u>ʌ</u> nt]	to chase and kill wild animals for food or as a sport
plough	[pl <u>ʌ</u> ʊ]	to turn earth over, usually before seeds are planted

ADJECTIVES

peaceful	[pi:sfəl]	quiet and calm
rural	[rʊərəl]	not near cities or large towns

PHRASE

in the open air outside rather than in a building

EXAMPLES

The group hiked along a track in the forest.

The service is ideal for people who live in rural areas.

We eat our meals in the open air.

employment

NOUNS

annual leave

(BRIT)

see **vacation**

application

[æplɪkeɪʃən]

a document with questions that you must answer when you apply for a job; *fill in an application*

apprentice

[əprɛntɪs]

a young person who works for someone in order to learn their skill

benefits

[bɛnɪfɪts]

money or other advantages which come from your job, the government, or an insurance company such as a retirement plan; *a salaried position with benefits*

bonus

[bəʊnəs]

an extra amount of money that you earn, usually because you have worked very hard; *a bonus payment*

boss	[bɔːs]	the person who is in charge of you at the place where you work
career	[kəˈrɪər]	a job that you do for a long time, or the years of your life that you spend working
colleague	[kɒliːg]	a person someone works with
company	[kʌmpəni]	a business that sells goods or services
contract	[kɒntrækt]	an official agreement between two companies or two people
covering letter (BRIT)		see cover letter
cover letter	[kʌvər lɛtər]	a letter that you send with an application form in order to provide extra information (<i>In British English, use covering letter</i>)
co-worker	[kəʊwɜːrkər]	a person you work with
CV (BRIT)		see résumé
disability	[dɪsəˈbɪlɪti]	a permanent injury or condition that makes it difficult for you to work or live normally

EXAMPLES

Their son Dominic is an apprentice woodworker.

discrimination	[dɪskrɪm- Ineɪʃən]	the practice of treating one person or group unfairly, for example, by paying them less money than other people; <i>age discrimination; racial/sexual discrimination</i>
employee	[ɪmplɔɪi]	a person who is paid to work for another person or a company
employer	[ɪmplɔɪər]	the person or the company that you work for
employment	[ɪmplɔɪmənt]	work that you are paid for
equality	[ɪkwɒlɪti]	the fair treatment of all the people in a group
flexitime	[flɛksɪtəm]	a system that allows employees to start or finish work at different times, provided that they work an agreed number of hours in total
freelancer	[friːlænsər]	someone who is not employed by an organization, and does

work for more than one
company

HR

see **human resources**

**human
resources**

[hyʊmən
rɪsɔːrsɪz]

the department in a company
that finds, trains, and looks after
the staff

income

[ɪnkʌm]

the money that a person earns
or receives

interview

[ɪntərvju]

a formal meeting in which
someone asks you questions to
find out if you are the right
person for a job; *ask someone for
an interview*

job

[dʒɒb]

1 the work that someone does to
earn money; *get a good job*
2 a particular task; *do a good job*

layoffs

[leɪɔːfz]

a situation in which you lose
your job because it is no longer
necessary or because the
organization can no longer
afford to pay you; *company-wide
layoffs (In British English, use
redundancy)*

EXAMPLES

When I went for my first interview for this job I arrived early.

maternity leave	[məʊtɜːnɪti liːv]	a period of time when a woman leaves her job to have a baby
minimum wage	[mɪnɪməm weɪdʒ]	the lowest wage that an employer is allowed to pay an employee; <i>on the minimum wage</i>
notice	[nəʊtɪs]	the act of telling your employer that you are going to leave your job; <i>give in/hand in your notice</i>
occupation	[ˌɒkjəˈpeɪʃən]	someone's job; <i>What is your occupation?</i>
overtime	[ˌoʊvətaɪm]	extra time that you spend doing your job
paternity leave	[pətɜːnɪti liːv]	a period of time when a man does not go to work because his child has just been born
pay	[peɪ]	to give someone money for the work that they do
profession	[prəˈfɛʃən]	a type of job for which you need special education or training

promotion	[prəməʊʃən]	a move to a more important job or rank in the organization that you work for; <i>get a promotion</i>
rate of pay	[reɪt əv peɪ]	the money that workers can earn for a particular amount of work; <i>a higher/lower rate of pay</i>
recruitment	[rɪkrʊtmənt]	the process of selecting people to work for an organization
redundancy (BRIT)		see layoffs
reference	[rɛfərəns, rɛfrəns]	a statement from someone who knows you, describing your character and your abilities
résumé	[rɛzʊmeɪ]	a document giving details of your education and work experience that you send to someone when you are trying to get a new job (<i>In British English, use CV</i>)

EXAMPLES

These workers are not even on the minimum wage.

You have to give one month's notice.

Could you write me a reference?

Please send your résumé and a cover letter to the following address.

retirement	[rɪtaɪərmənt]	the period in someone's life after they retire
rise	[raɪz]	an increase in the money that you earn; <i>get a rise</i>
salary	[sæləri]	the money that you earn from your employer
seasonal work	[siːzənəl wɜrk]	work that is only available at particular times of the year
sick leave	[sɪk liv]	the time that a person spends away from work because of illness or injury
staff	[stæf]	the people who work for an organization
strike	[straɪk]	a period of time when workers refuse to work, usually in order to try to get more money; <i>go on strike</i>
temp	[tɛmp]	a temporary office worker
temping agency	[tɛmpɪŋ eɪdʒənsi]	a company that finds jobs for people who want to work in

		different offices for short periods of time
trade union	[treɪd yʊnyən]	an organization formed by workers in order to improve conditions for workers
training	[treɪnɪŋ]	the process of learning the skills that you need for a particular job; <i>a training course</i>
the unemployed	[ði ʌnɪmplɔɪd]	people who do not have a job
unemployment	[ʌnɪmplɔɪmənt]	a situation in which people cannot work because there are not enough jobs
vacation	[veɪkeɪʃən]	an amount of time in every year when you are paid, but you do not have to go to work; <i>take vacation; be on vacation</i> (<i>In British English, use annual leave</i>)
wages	[weɪdʒɪz]	money that is paid to someone for the work that they do; <i>get your wages</i>

EXAMPLES

Staff at the hospital went on strike yesterday.

We want to create jobs for the unemployed

work	[wɜːrk]	1 a job that you do to earn money; <i>find work</i> 2 the place where you do your job; <i>go to work</i>
working week	[wɜːrkiŋ wik]	the total amount of time that you spend at work during the week; <i>a 35-hour working week</i>

VERBS

apply for a job		to write a letter or write on a form in order to ask for a job
discriminate	[dɪskrɪmɪneɪt]	to treat a person or a group of people unfairly
dismiss	[dɪsmɪs]	to tell someone that they have to leave their job
earn	[ɜːrn]	to receive money for work that you do; <i>earn money</i>
employ	[ɪmplɔɪ]	to pay someone to work for a person or a company

fire	[faɪə]	[informal] to tell someone that they have to leave their job; <i>She was fired from that job.</i>
hire	[haɪə]	to pay someone to do a job for you
interview	[ɪntəvju]	to ask someone questions to find out if they are the right person for a particular job
lay off	[leɪ ɔf]	to be forced to leave your job or to force someone to leave a job; <i>get laid off; lay off someone</i>
pay	[peɪ]	to give someone money for the work that they do; <i>well/badly paid</i>
promote	[prəməʊt]	to give someone a more important job in the same organization

EXAMPLES

I start work at 8:30 am and finish at 5 pm.

I'm lucky. I can walk to work.

Richard has just been promoted to general manager.

recruit	[rɪkrʊt]	to choose people to work in an organization
resign	[rɪzʌɪn]	to tell your employer that you are leaving a job
retire	[rɪtaɪə]	to leave your job and stop working, usually because of your age
strike	[straɪk]	to refuse to work, usually to try to get more money
temp	[tɛmp]	to work as a temp
work	[wɜrk]	to have a job and earn money for it

ADJECTIVES

absent	[æbsənt]	not at work
blue-collar	[blu kɒlər]	working in industry, doing physical work, rather than in offices
freelance	[fri:læns]	working alone for different companies, rather than being employed by one company that pays you regularly

full-time	[fʊl taɪm]	working for the whole of each normal working week
laid off	[leɪd ɔf]	without a job because there is not enough work or money to keep you (<i>In British English, use redundant</i>)
part-time	[pɑrt taɪm]	working for only part of each day or week
permanent	[pɜːmənənt]	employed for an unlimited length of time
redundant (BRIT)		see laid off
temporary	[tɛmpərəri]	lasting or working for only a certain period of time; <i>a temporary job; temporary workers</i>
unemployed	[ʌnɪmplɔɪd]	able to work but without a job
white-collar	[waɪt kɒlər]	working in offices rather than doing physical work in industry

EXAMPLES

Workers have the right to strike.

Mrs Lee has been temping since losing her job.

Many people in the country are still working for less than the minimum wage.

Have you been unemployed for over six months?

PHRASE

What do you do

you ask “What do you do (for a living)?” (**for a living**)? when you want to know what someone’s job is

IDIOMS

get a foot in the door

to manage to enter an organization that you hope to succeed in

a golden handshake

a large sum of money that a company may give to an employee when he or she leaves

the rat race

a job or way of life in which people compete aggressively with each other to be successful;
get out of the rat race

environment

NOUNS

bottle bank	[bɒtəl bæŋk]	a large container where you can put empty bottles so that the glass can be recycled
carbon dioxide	[kɑːrbən daɪɒksaɪd]	a gas that is produced when animals and people breathe out, and by certain chemical processes
carbon monoxide	[kɑːrbən mɒnɒksaɪd]	a harmful gas that is produced by the engines of vehicles
chemical	[kɛmɪkəl]	a substance that is made by changing or combining other substances
climate change	[klaɪmɪtʃeɪndʒ]	changes in the Earth's climate (= normal weather) over a long period of time
conservation	[kɒnsəˈveɪʃən]	the activity of taking care of the environment; a

conservation group

crisis (PL) crises	[kraɪsɪs] [kraɪsɪs]	a situation that is very serious or dangerous
damage	[dæmɪdʒ]	physical harm that happens to something
diesel	[dizəl]	a type of oil that is used in the engines of some vehicles instead of gas
disaster	[dɪzæstər]	a very bad accident or event that may hurt many people
Earth	[ɜrθ]	the planet that we live on
electric car	[ɪlɛktrɪk kɑr]	a car that is powered by electricity
endangered species	[ɪndɛɪndʒərdspiːʃɪz]	a type of animal or plant that may soon disappear from the world
energy	[ɛnədʒi]	the power that makes machines work or that provides heat
the environment	[ðɪ ɪnvɑɪərən-mənt, -vɑɪərən-]	the natural world, consisting of land, the seas, the air, plants and animals

exhaust fumes [ɪgzɔːst fyʊmz] gases that cars give out as waste

EXAMPLES

I'm going to take these bottles to the bottle bank.

Pandas are an endangered species.

You can save energy by switching off your computer when you are not using it.

These gases are harmful to the environment.

fuel [fyuəl] a substance such as coal or oil that is burned to provide heat or power

fumes [fyʊmz] the unpleasant and harmful gases that are produced by things such as chemicals and fuel

global warming [glɔːbəlwɔːmɪŋ] the slow rise in the Earth's temperature

greenhouse effect [grɪnhaʊsɪfekt] the rise in the Earth's temperature caused by a build-up of gases around the Earth

habitat [hæbɪtæt] the place where an animal or a plant lives or grows

hydro-electric power	[hɑ̃drou̩lektrɪk paʊər]	electricity that is produced by water power
industrial waste	[ɪndʌstriəl weɪst]	waste produced by factories
landfill	[lændfɪl]	1 a method of disposing of a lot of waste by burying it in a large deep hole; <i>the cost of landfill</i> 2 a large deep hole that waste is buried in; <i>a landfill site</i>
low-energy bulb	[ləʊ ɛnɜrdʒi bʌlb]	a light bulb that uses less electricity than normal light bulbs
nature	[neɪtʃər]	all the animals and plants in the world, as well as the land and the sea
nuclear power	[njuːkliər paʊər]	energy that is produced when the central part of an atom is split
nuclear waste	[njuːkliər weɪst]	harmful material from nuclear plants
oxygen	[ɒksɪdʒən]	a colorless gas that people, plants, and animals need to breathe in order to live

ozone layer [ˌoʊzəʊn leɪər] a part of the atmosphere that protects us from harmful rays from the sun; *a hole in the ozone layer*

planet [ˈplænɪt] a large, round object in space that moves around a star. The Earth is a planet.

EXAMPLES

Scientists are trying to find a solution to global warming.

The pollution of rivers destroys the habitats of many fish.

Millions of plastic bags go to landfill every day.

pollution [pəˈluːʃən] 1 the process of making water, air, or land dirty and dangerous; *the pollution of our oceans*
2 harmful substances that make water, air, or land dirty and dangerous; *high levels of pollution*

population [ˌpɒpyələˈeɪʃən] all the people who live in a country or an area

rainforest [ˈreɪnfɔːrɪst] a thick forest of tall trees that grows in tropical areas where there is a lot of rain

recycling	[rɪsaɪklɪŋ]	processing things such as paper and glass so that they can be used again
renewable energy	[rɪnuəbəl ɛnədʒi]	power from wind, water, and sunlight, which are always available
sewage	[suːdʒ]	waste material, especially from people's bodies, which flows away through underground pipes
solar panel	[səʊlər pæneɪl]	a piece of equipment on a roof that collects energy from sunlight in order to heat water and produce electricity
solar power	[səʊlər paʊər]	energy from the sun that is used to heat water and produce electricity
solution	[səluʃən]	a way of dealing with a problem
unleaded gas	[ʌnlɛdɪd gæs]	gas that contains less lead than normal gas and causes less damage to the environment (<i>In British English, use unleaded petrol</i>)

unleaded petrol	(BRIT)	see unleaded gas
wildlife	[waɪldlaɪf]	the animals and other living things that live in nature
wind power	[wɪnd paʊər]	energy from the wind that can be used to make electricity

EXAMPLES

The government have plans to reduce air pollution.

The population of Bangladesh is rising every year.

We installed solar panels on our roof last year.

This car runs on unleaded gas.

world	[wɜːrld]	the planet that we live on
--------------	----------	----------------------------

VERBS

ban	[bæn]	to say officially that something must not be done, shown, or used; <i>ban the use of chemicals</i>
damage	[dæmɪdʒ]	to have a bad effect on something so that it is less strong or successful
destroy	[dɪstrɔɪ]	to cause so much damage to

		something that it cannot be used any longer, or does not exist any longer
dispose of something		to get rid of something; <i>dispose of waste</i>
dump	[dʌmp]	to leave something somewhere quickly and carelessly
harm	[hɑ:m]	same as damage
pollute	[pəlu:t]	to make water, air, or land dirty
preserve	[prɪzɜ:v]	to take action to save something or protect it; <i>preserve nature</i>
protect	[prətekt]	to keep someone or something safe from harm or damage; <i>protect wildlife</i>
recycle	[rɪsaɪkəl]	to process things such as paper or bottles so that they can be used again
save	[seɪv]	1 to protect something from harm; <i>save the rainforests</i> 2 to use less of something; <i>save paper</i>
use something		to finish something so that none

up

of it is left; *use up resources*

ADJECTIVES

biodegradable

[baɪəʊ-
dɪɡreɪdəbəl]

able to decay naturally without
harming the environment;
biodegradable packaging

EXAMPLES

This book was printed on recycled paper.

We should recycle our trash.

They are developing a new kind of biodegradable plastic.

eco-friendly

[ɛkəʊ frɛndli,
ɪkoʊ]

same as **environmentally
friendly**; *an eco-friendly
product*

**environmentally
friendly**

[ɪnvəɪrənmentəli
frɛndli,-vaɪərn-]

not harmful to the
environment, or less harmful
to the environment

extinct

[ɪkstɪŋkt]

not existing any more; *this
species is extinct*

green

[grɪn]

relating to the protection of
the environment; *green policies*

harmful

[hɑːrmfəl]

having a bad effect on

		someone or something
organic	[ɔrgəˈnɪk]	grown without using chemicals
sustainable	[səstəˈɪnəbəl]	using natural products in a way that does not damage the environment; <i>sustainable farming; sustainable development</i>

EXAMPLES

These houses were built using eco-friendly materials.

How can we make our company more environmentally friendly?

Many animals will soon be extinct.

We are trying to be greener by walking to work rather than driving.

This shop sells organic food.

feelings and personal qualities

NOUNS

anger	[æŋgə]	the strong emotion that you feel when you think that someone has behaved badly or has treated you unfairly
excitement	[ɪksaɪtmənt]	the feeling you have when you are excited
fear	[fɪə]	the unpleasant feeling you have when you think that you are in danger
feeling	[fi:liŋ]	a state in which you feel something such as anger or happiness
feelings	[fi:liŋz]	your emotions; <i>hurt someone's feelings</i>
guilt	[gɪlt]	an unhappy feeling that you have when you think that you have done something wrong

happiness	[hæpɪnɪs]	a feeling of being pleased and satisfied
honesty	[ɒnɪsti]	the quality of being honest
intelligence	[ɪntɛlɪdʒəns]	the ability to understand and learn things quickly and well
kindness	[kaɪndnɪs]	the quality of being friendly and helpful
mood	[muːd]	the way you are feeling at a particular time
nature	[neɪtʃər]	a person's character, which they show by the way they behave; <i>a friendly nature</i>
personality	[pɜːrsənælɪti]	the qualities that make you different from other people

EXAMPLES

Everyone is in a state of great excitement.

My whole body was shaking with fear.

Sara has a fear of mice.

I have a feeling that everything will be all right.

They have strong feelings about politics.

She felt a lot of guilt about her children's unhappiness.

I am always in a good mood.

He is in a bad mood.

She is a very good-natured child.

pride	[praɪd]	1 a feeling of satisfaction that you have because you have done something well; <i>a sense of pride</i> 2 a sense of dignity and self-respect
quality	[kwɒlɪti]	a particular characteristic that a person has
regret	[rɪɡrɛt]	a feeling of sadness caused by something that you have done or not done; <i>express regret</i>
relief	[rɪlɪf]	the feeling of happiness that you get when something unpleasant has not happened or is no longer happening
spite	[spaɪt]	a feeling that makes you do something to hurt or upset someone; <i>He did it out of spite.</i>
stupidity	[stʊpɪdɪti]	lack of intelligence or consideration
surprise	[səpraɪz]	the feeling you have when something that you do not expect happens

ADJECTIVES

ambitious	[æmbɪʃəs]	having a strong feeling that you want to be successful, rich, or powerful
angry	[æŋɡri]	feeling a strong emotion when someone has done something bad or has treated you unfairly
annoyed	[ənɔɪd]	angry about something
anxious	[æŋkʃəs]	nervous or worried
ashamed	[əʃeɪmd]	feeling embarrassed or guilty
bored	[bɔɪd]	not interested in something, or having nothing to do; <i>get bored</i>

EXAMPLES

He takes great pride in his work.

His pride wouldn't allow him to ask for help.

She has lots of good qualities.

He had no regrets about leaving.

I breathed a sigh of relief.

To my surprise, I found I liked working hard.

I was ashamed of myself for getting so angry.

calm	[kɑm]	not worried, angry, or excited;
-------------	-------	---------------------------------

Try to keep calm.

cheerful	[tʃɪər ʃ əfəl]	happy
competent	[kɒmpɪtənt]	able to do something well
confident	[kɒnfɪdənt]	feeling sure about your own abilities and ideas
curious	[kyʊəriəs]	wanting to know more about something
depressed	[dɪprɛst]	feeling very sad
dishonest	[dɪspɒnɪst]	not honest
dissatisfied	[dɪssætɪsfaɪd]	not happy about something; <i>dissatisfied customers</i>
embarrassed	[ɪmbærəst]	feeling shy, ashamed, or guilty about something
enthusiastic	[ɪnθʊziæstɪk]	showing how much you like or enjoy something
envious	[ɛnviəs]	wanting something that someone else has
excited	[ɪksaɪtɪd]	very happy or enthusiastic
friendly	[frɛndli]	behaving in a pleasant, kind way; <i>Samir was friendly to me.</i>
frightened	[fraɪtənd]	anxious or afraid

frustrated	[frʌstreɪtɪd]	upset or angry because there is nothing you can do about a problem
funny	[fʌni]	amusing and likely to make you smile or laugh
furious	[fyʊəriəs]	extremely angry
glad	[glæd]	happy and pleased about something
grateful	[ɡreɪtfəl]	wanting to thank someone for something that they have given you or done for you

EXAMPLES

She was very depressed after her husband died.

He looked a bit embarrassed when he noticed his mistake.

Tom was not very enthusiastic about the idea.

I have to admit I was a little envious

I was excited about playing football again.

She was frightened of making a mistake.

They seemed glad to see me.

She was grateful to him for being so helpful.

guilty	[ɡɪlti]	feeling unhappy because you think that you have done
---------------	---------	--

		something wrong; <i>feel guilty</i>
happy	[hæpi]	feeling pleased and satisfied; <i>a happy child</i>
helpful	[hɛlpfʊl]	helping you by doing something useful for you
honest	[ɒnɪst]	always telling the truth and not stealing or cheating
hurt	[hɜrt]	upset because of something that someone has said or done
impatient	[ɪmpeɪʃənt]	1 annoyed because you have to wait too long for something 2 becoming annoyed very quickly
independent	[ɪndɪpɛndənt]	able to take care of yourself without needing help or money from anyone else
insecure	[ɪnsɪkyʊər]	not confident
intelligent	[ɪntɛlɪdʒənt]	able to understand and learn things quickly and well
jealous	[dʒɛləs]	1 feeling angry because you think that another person is

trying to take away someone or something that you love

2 feeling angry or unhappy because you

do not have something that someone else has

kind [kʌɪnd]

friendly and helpful

lonely [lʌnli]

unhappy because you are alone

loving [lʌvɪŋ]

feeling or showing love for other people; *a loving husband*

mean [min]

unkind or cruel

EXAMPLES

She was deeply hurt by Ali's remarks.

People are impatient for the war to be over.

Try not to be impatient with your kids.

Children become more independent as they grow.

Most people are a little insecure about their looks.

He got jealous and there was a fight.

She was jealous of her sister's success.

Don't be mean to your brother!

miserable [mɪzərəbəl]

very unhappy

naughty [nɔti]

badly behaved, and not doing

		what someone tells you to do; <i>a naughty boy</i>
nervous	[nɜːrvəs]	frightened or worried
nice	[naɪs]	friendly and pleasant
optimistic	[ɒptɪmɪstɪk]	hopeful about the success of something
pessimistic	[pɛsɪmɪstɪk]	thinking that bad things are going to happen
pleased	[plɪzd]	happy about something or satisfied with something; <i>I am very pleased with your work.</i>
polite	[pəleɪt]	behaving with respect towards other people
proud	[praʊd]	1 pleased and satisfied about something good that you or other people close to you have done 2 thinking that you are better than other people
relaxed	[rɪlæksɪd]	calm and not worried
relieved	[rɪlivd]	feeling happy because something unpleasant has not

		happened or is no longer happening
rude	[r <u>u</u> d]	not polite
sad	[s <u>æ</u> d]	unhappy
satisfied	[s <u>æt</u> ɪsfɑɪd]	happy because you have what you wanted
scared	[sk <u>ɛ</u> əd]	frightened; <i>I'm not scared of him.</i>
selfish	[s <u>ɛ</u> lfɪʃ]	caring only about yourself, and not about other people
sensitive	[sensɪtɪv]	1 showing that you understand other people's feelings 2 easily worried and offended about something when people talk about it

EXAMPLES

They were extremely nice to me.

His dad was very proud of him.

We are relieved to be back home.

The classroom teacher must be sensitive to a child's needs.

Young people can be sensitive about their appearance.

serious	[sɪ <u>ə</u> riəs]	thinking a lot, and not smiling
----------------	--------------------	---------------------------------

		or laughing much
shocked	[ʃɒkt]	very upset because of something unpleasant that has happened
shy	[ʃaɪ]	nervous about talking to people that you do not know well
stupid	[stʊpɪd]	not intelligent, and not able to behave in a sensible way
surprised	[səpraɪzd]	having the feeling you get when something happens that you did not expect
suspicious	[səspɪʃəs]	not trusting someone or something
thoughtful	[θɔːtfəl]	thinking about other people's feelings
thoughtless	[θɔːtlɪs]	not thinking about other people's feelings
uncomfortable	[ʌnkʌmftəbəl, -kʌmfərtə-]	slightly worried or embarrassed
unhappy	[ʌnhæpi]	1 sad 2 not satisfied with something
upset	[ʌpsɛt]	unhappy because something bad

has happened; *Marta looked upset.*

well-behaved [wɛl biheɪvd] behaving in a way that other people think is polite and correct; *well-behaved little boys*

worried [wɜːrɪd] thinking about problems that you have or about unpleasant things that might happen

EXAMPLES

She was deeply shocked when she heard the news.

We were surprised by the play's success.

It was thoughtless of me to forget your birthday.

The request for money made them feel uncomfortable.

We were unhappy with the way we played on Friday.

When she did not come home, they got worried.

VERBS

become [bɪkʌm] to start to feel a particular way;
become anxious

behave [biheɪv] to do and say things in a particular way; *behave strangely*

calm down to become less upset or excited

enjoy	[ɪndʒɔɪ]	to like doing something
enjoy yourself		to get pleasure from an experience
feel	[fi:l]	to experience a particular emotion; <i>How do you feel?</i>
grow	[grəʊ]	to begin to have a particular feeling; <i>Lisbet soon grew bored.</i>
hurt	[hɜ:t]	to say or do something that makes someone unhappy
suffer	[sʌfə]	to feel pain, sadness or worry
upset	[ʌpsɛt]	to make you feel worried or unhappy

IDIOMS

down in the dumps		unhappy or depressed
get on someone's nerves		to annoy someone
hit the roof		to suddenly become very angry
over the moon		extremely happy and excited

EXAMPLES

I enjoyed playing basketball.

I'm really sorry if I hurt your feelings.

His behavior really upset me.

food and drink

NOUNS

food [fud] the things that people and animals eat

MEAT AND FISH

bacon [bekən] slices of salted or smoked meat that comes from a pig; *eggs and bacon for breakfast*

beef [bif] meat from a cow

chicken [tʃikɪn] 1 a bird that is kept on a farm for its eggs and meat
2 the meat of this bird; *chicken sandwiches*

fish (pl) fish, fishes [fiʃ] an animal that lives and swims in water, that people eat as food

gravy [grevi] a sauce made from the juices that come from meat when it cooks

ground beef [graund bif] meat that has been cut into very

		small pieces using a machine (<i>In British English, use mince</i>)
ham	[hæm]	meat from a pig that has been prepared with salt and spices; <i>ham sandwiches</i>
hamburger	[hæmbɜrgər]	a type of food made from small pieces of meat that have been shaped into a flat circle. Hamburgers are fried or grilled and are often eaten in a round bread roll.
lamb	[læm]	the flesh of a young sheep eaten as food
meat	[mi:t]	the part of an animal that people cook and eat
mince (BRIT)		see ground beef
pork	[pɜrk]	meat from a pig
sausage	[sɔsɪdʒ]	a mixture of very small pieces of meat, spices and other foods, inside a long thin skin

EXAMPLES

We had roast beef for lunch.

I don't eat meat or fish.

Fry the ground beef in a frying pan.

For supper, she served lamb and vegetables.

They ate sausages for breakfast.

seafood	[sɪfud]	fish and other small animals from the sea that you can eat; <i>a seafood restaurant</i>
steak	[steɪk]	1 a large flat piece of beef without much fat on it; <i>steak and fries</i> 2 a large piece of fish that does not contain many bones; <i>a salmon steak</i>

EGGS, CHEESE AND MILK PRODUCTS

butter	[bʌtər]	a soft yellow food made from cream that you spread on bread or use in cooking
cheese	[tʃiːz]	a solid food that is usually white or yellow and is made from milk
cream	[kriːm]	a thick liquid that is made from milk; <i>whipped cream</i>

custard	[kʌstərd]	a sweet yellow sauce made of milk, eggs, and sugar
egg	[ɛg]	a hen's egg, that people eat as food in many countries; <i>a boiled egg; a hard-boiled egg; a poached egg; scrambled eggs</i>
ice cream	[aɪs krim]	1 a frozen sweet food made from cream, sugar, and sometimes fruit or chocolate; <i>chocolate ice cream</i> 2 a portion of ice cream; <i>two ice creams</i>
margarine	[mɑrdʒərɪn]	a yellow substance that is made from vegetable oil, and is similar to butter; <i>a tub of margarine</i>
mayonnaise	[meɪəneɪz]	a cold, thick sauce made from eggs and oil
omelet	[ɒmlɪt, ɒməlɪt]	a type of food made by mixing eggs and cooking them in a frying pan; <i>a cheese omelet (In British English, use omelette)</i>
omelette		see omelet

(BRIT)

yoghurt (BRIT)

see **yogurt**

yogurt [yogərt]

a thick liquid food that is made from milk (*In British English, use **yoghurt***)

EXAMPLES

Jordi spread some butter on a roll.

We had apple pie and custard for dessert.

Break the eggs into a bowl.

BREAD, CAKES, AND BISCUITS

biscuit (BRIT)

see **cookie**

bread [brɛd]

a food made mostly from flour and water and baked in an oven;
a slice of bread

cake [keɪk]

a sweet food that you make from flour, eggs, sugar, and butter; *a birthday cake*

cookie [kuki]

a type of hard, dry cake that is usually sweet and round in shape; *a chocolate biscuit* (*In British English, use **biscuit***)

loaf	[l <u>o</u> ʊf]	bread that has been shaped and baked in one large piece; <i>a loaf of bread</i>
pancake	[p <u>æ</u> nkeɪk]	a thin, round food made from milk, flour, and eggs, cooked in a frying pan
roll	[r <u>o</u> ʊl]	bread in a small round or long shape
sandwich	[s <u>æ</u> nwɪtʃ], s <u>æ</u> nd-]	two slices of bread with another food such as cheese or meat between them; <i>a cheese sandwich; a toasted sandwich</i>
toast	[t <u>o</u> ʊst]	slices of bread that you have heated until they are hard and brown; <i>slices of toast</i>

OTHER FOOD

candy	[k <u>æ</u> ndi]	small pieces of sweet food such as chocolates (<i>In British English, use sweets</i>)
cereal	[s <u>ɪ</u> əriəl]	1 a food made from grain, that people eat with milk for breakfast; <i>a bowl of cereal</i>

2 a plant that produces grain for food; *cereal grains such as corn and wheat*

chips

1 very thin slices of potato that have been cooked in oil and are eaten as a snack; *a bag of potato chips (In British English, use **crisps**)*

2 (BRIT) see **fries**

EXAMPLES

Patricia put two pieces of bread on a plate and buttered them.

I blew out the candles and Mom sliced the cake.

Raul ate a piece of chocolate cake.

He spread some butter on a roll.

Eat more fruit and vegetables and less candy.

chocolate [tʃɔkəlɪt,
tʃɔklɪt]

1 a brown food eaten as a sweet;
a bar of chocolate

2 a small sweet covered with chocolate; *a box of chocolates*

crisps (BRIT)

see **chips**

curry [kʌri]

a dish, originally from Asia, that is cooked with hot spices;

		<i>vegetable curry</i>
dish	[dɪʃ]	food that is prepared in a particular way; <i>a chicken dish</i>
fast food	[fæst fʊd]	hot food, such as hamburgers, that is served quickly after you order it; <i>a fast food restaurant</i>
flour	[flaʊər]	a fine powder that is used for making bread, cakes, and pastry; <i>wholemeal flour</i>
fries	[fraɪz]	long thin pieces of potato, cooked in oil and eaten hot; <i>a burger and fries (In British English, use chips)</i>
honey	[hʌni]	a sweet, sticky food that is made by bees (= black-and-yellow insects); <i>a jar of honey</i>
jam	[dʒæm]	a sweet food containing soft fruit and sugar, that is usually spread on bread; <i>strawberry jam</i>
jello	[dʒeləʊ]	a soft sweet food made from fruit juice and sugar that moves from side to side when you

touch it; *jello and ice cream* (*In British English, use **jelly***)

jelly [dʒɛli] 1 same as **jam**; *raspberry jelly*
2 (*BRIT*) see **jello**

lasagna [ləʒɑnyə] a dish that consists of layers of pasta, sauce, and a filling such as meat or cheese, baked in an oven (*In British English, use **lasagne***)

lasagne (*BRIT*) see **lasagna**

EXAMPLES

Let's eat curry tonight.

My favorite dish is lasagna.

noodles [nuːdʌlz] long, thin strips of pasta, used especially in Chinese and Italian cooking; *a bowl of noodles*

oil [ɔɪl] a smooth, thick liquid made from plants, that is often used for cooking; *vegetable oil*

pasta [pɑstə] a type of food made from a mixture of flour, eggs, and water

		that is made into different shapes and then boiled
pastry	[p <u>ɛ</u> stri]	a food made from flour, fat, and water that is often used for making pies
pâté	[p <u>ɑ</u> t <u>ɛ</u>]	a mixture of meat, fish, or vegetables that is mixed into a paste and eaten cold; <i>liver pâté</i>
pepper	[p <u>ɛ</u> p <u>ə</u> r]	a brown or black spice with a hot taste that you put on food; <i>salt and pepper</i>
pie	[p <u>a</u> i]	a dish consisting of fruit with a pastry crust
pizza	[p <u>ɪ</u> ts <u>ə</u>]	a flat, round piece of bread that is covered with tomatoes, cheese, and sometimes other foods, and then baked in an oven
rice	[r <u>a</u> ɪs]	white or brown grains from a plant that grows in warm, wet areas; <i>plain boiled rice</i>
salad	[s <u>æ</u> l <u>ə</u> d]	a mixture of foods, especially vegetables, that you usually

serve cold; *a green salad; a mixed salad*

salt	[sɔlt]	a white substance that you use to improve the flavor of food
sauce	[sɔs]	a thick liquid that you eat with other food; <i>pasta sauce</i>
snack	[snæk]	a simple meal that is quick to prepare and eat; <i>have a snack</i>
soup	[sup]	a liquid food made by boiling meat, fish, or vegetables in water; <i>home-made soup</i>
spaghetti	[spægɪti]	a type of pasta that looks like long pieces of string

EXAMPLES

The pasta is cooked in a garlic and tomato sauce.

Bruno ordered a thin-crust pizza.

The children have a snack when they come home from school.

stew	[stu]	a meal that you make by cooking meat and vegetables slowly in liquid
sugar	[ʃʊgər]	a sweet substance used for

making food and drinks taste
sweet; *a spoonful of sugar*

sweets (*BRIT*)

see **candy**

vinegar [vɪnɪgər]

a sour, sharp-tasting liquid that
is used in cooking

DRINKS

**alcoholic
drink** [ælkəhɒlɪk
drɪŋk]

a drink that contains alcohol

beer [bɪər]

an alcoholic drink made from
grain

cider [saɪdər]

an alcoholic drink made from
apples

coffee [kɒfi]

a drink made from boiling water
and the beans of the coffee
plant, made into a powder;
strong coffee; Two coffees, please.

hot chocolate [hɒt tʃɒkəlɪt,
tʃɒklɪt]

a drink made by mixing
chocolate powder with milk or
water

ice cube [aɪs kyub]

a small block of ice that you put
into a drink to make it cold

juice	[dʒ <u>u</u> s]	the liquid that comes from a fruit or a vegetable; <i>orange/apple/lemon/fruit juice</i>
lemonade	[lɛmən <u>e</u> ɪd]	a drink that is made from lemons, sugar, and water
milk	[m <u>ɪ</u> lk]	the white liquid that cows and some other animals produce, which people drink
mineral water	[mɪnərə <u>l</u> wɔtər]	water that comes out of the ground naturally and is considered healthy to drink
soft drink	[sɔft dr <u>ɪ</u> ŋk]	a cold non-alcoholic drink such as ginger ale
tap water	[tæ <u>p</u> wɔtər]	the water that comes out of a tap in a building such as a house or a hotel

EXAMPLES

She gave him a bowl of beef stew.

Do you take sugar in your coffee?

We ordered a couple of beers and asked for the menu.

tea [ti] a drink that you make by

pouring boiling water on the dry leaves of a plant called the tea bush; *a pot of tea*

whisky [wɪski] a strong alcoholic drink made from grain

wine [waɪn] an alcoholic drink made from grapes (= small green or purple fruit); *red/white wine; a glass of wine*

ITEMS USED FOR EATING, DRINKING, AND SERVING MEALS

bottle [bɒtl̩] a glass or plastic container in which drinks and other liquids are kept

bowl [boʊl] a round container that is used for mixing and serving food

chopsticks [tʃɒpstɪks] a pair of thin sticks that people in East Asia use for eating food

cup [kʌp] a small round container that you drink from; *a cup of coffee*

dish [dɪʃ] a shallow container for cooking or serving food; *a serving dish; a dish of hot vegetables*

fork	[fɔ̃rk]	a tool with long metal points, used for eating food; <i>knives and forks</i>
glass	[glæs]	a container made from glass, which you can drink from
jug	[dʒʌg]	a container with a handle, used for holding and pouring liquids; <i>a milk jug</i>
knife (PL) knives	[naɪf] [naɪvz]	a sharp flat piece of metal with a handle, used for cutting things; <i>a sharp/blunt knife</i>
mug	[mʌg]	a deep cup with straight sides; <i>a mug of coffee</i>
napkin	[næpkɪn]	a square of cloth or paper that you use when you are eating to protect your clothes, or to wipe your mouth or hands
plate	[pleɪt]	a flat dish that is used for holding food; <i>a plate of sandwiches</i>
saucer	[sɔ̃sər]	a small curved plate that you put under a cup

EXAMPLES

Put the soup in a bowl.

spoon	[sp <u>u</u> n]	a long object with a round end that is used for eating, serving or mixing food; <i>a serving spoon</i>
straw	[str <u>ɔ</u>]	a thin tube that you use to suck a drink into your mouth
teapot	[t <u>i</u> pɒt]	a container that is used for making and serving tea
teaspoon	[t <u>i</u> spun]	a small spoon that you use for putting sugar into tea or coffee

CAFÉS AND RESTAURANTS

à la carte	[<u>ɑ</u> lə k <u>ɑ</u> rt]	an à la carte menu in a restaurant is a list of dishes that each have a different price
bar	[b <u>ɑ</u> r]	a place where you can buy and drink alcoholic drinks
bill (BRIT)		see check
café	[kæf <u>eɪ</u>]	a place where you can buy drinks and small meals

check	[tʃɛk]	a document that shows how much money you must pay for something (<i>In British English, use bill</i>)
chef	[ʃɛf]	a person who prepares and cooks food in a restaurant
menu	[mɛnyu]	a list of the food and drink that you can have in a restaurant
order	[ɔrdər]	the food or drink that you ask for in a bar, café or restaurant
restaurant	[rɛstərənt, -tərənt, -trənt]	a place where you can buy and eat a meal
service	[sɜrvɪs]	the help that people in a restaurant or a shop give you; <i>give/get good/poor service</i>

EXAMPLES

Maisie was drinking juice with a straw.

Can we have the check please?

tip	[tɪp]	money that you give to a waiter or waitress to thank them for a job they have done for you
------------	-------	--

waiter	[weɪtər]	a man whose job is to serve food in a restaurant
waitress	[weɪtrɪs]	a woman whose job is to serve food in a restaurant
wine list	[waɪn list]	a menu of wines that are available in a restaurant

EXPERIENCING FOOD

flavor	[fleɪvər]	the taste of a food or drink (<i>In British English, use flavour</i>)
flavour (BRIT)		see flavor
hunger	[hʌŋgər]	the feeling that you get when you need something to eat
smell	[smɛl]	the quality of something that you notice when you breathe in through your nose; <i>a lovely smell</i>
taste	[teɪst]	<p>1 the particular quality that something has when you put it in your mouth, for example whether it is sweet or salty; <i>the taste of chocolate; a horrible taste</i></p> <p>2 a small amount of food or</p>

drink that you try in order to see what the flavor is like; *Have a taste of this.*

thirst [θɜrst] the feeling that you get when you want to drink something

MEALS AND PARTS OF MEALS

appetizer [əpɪtaɪzər] a small amount of food that you eat as the first part of a meal

breakfast [brɛkfəst] the first meal of the day; *have breakfast*

EXAMPLES

I gave the waiter a tip.

The waitress brought our food and said, "Enjoy your meal!"

I added some pepper for extra flavor.

There was a horrible smell in the fridge.

I just love the smell of freshly baked bread.

course [kɔrs] one part of a meal; *a three-course meal*

dessert [dɪzɜrt] something sweet that you eat at the end of a meal

dinner	[dɪnər]	the main meal of the day, usually served in the evening; <i>have dinner; invite someone for dinner</i>
lunch	[lʌntʃ]	the meal that you have in the middle of the day; <i>have lunch</i>
main course	[meɪn kɔːrs]	the most important course of a meal
meal	[miːl]	1 an occasion when people sit down and eat 2 the food that you eat during a meal
starter	[stɑːtər]	same as appetizer
VERBS		
drink	[drɪŋk]	1 to take liquid into your mouth and swallow it; <i>drink some water</i> 2 to drink alcohol; <i>I don't drink.</i>
eat	[iːt]	to put something into your mouth and swallow it
order	[ɔːrdər]	to ask for food or drink in a bar, café or restaurant
serve	[sɜːrv]	to give people food and drinks

in a restaurant or bar; *A waiter served us.*

smell [smɛl]

1 to have a quality that you notice by breathing in through your nose; *That cake smells delicious.*

2 to notice something when you breathe in through your nose; *I can smell garlic.*

swallow [swɒləʊ]

to make something go from your mouth down into your stomach

EXAMPLES

The meal consisted of chicken, rice, and vegetables.

Noah served me coffee and chocolate cake.

That smells good!

Polly took a bite of the apple and swallowed it.

taste [teɪst]

1 to have a particular flavor; *It tastes of lemons.*

2 to eat or drink a small amount of food or drink in order to see what the flavor is like; *Taste the soup.*

3 to be aware of the flavor of

something that you are eating or drinking; *Can you taste the garlic?*

ADJECTIVES

bad	[bæd]	food that is bad tastes and smells unpleasant because it is no longer fresh enough to be eaten; <i>gone bad</i>
canned	[kænd]	canned food lasts a long time because it is in a strong metal container (called a can); <i>canned tomatoes (In British English, use tinned)</i>
carbonated	[kɑrbəneɪtɪd]	carbonated drinks contain small bubbles (<i>In British English, use fizzy</i>)
delicious	[dɪlɪʃəs]	very good to eat
disgusting	[dɪsgʌstɪŋ]	extremely unpleasant
fizzy (BRIT)		see carbonated
fresh	[frɛʃ]	picked or prepared recently; <i>fresh vegetables</i>
frozen	[frɔʊzən]	used for describing food that has

been stored at a very low temperature; *frozen vegetables*

hungry [hʌŋgri] wanting to eat

juicy [dʒuːsi] containing a lot of juice in a pleasant way

off (BRIT) see **bad**

organic [ɔːrgænik] grown without using chemicals

raw [rɔː] not cooked; *raw fish*

EXAMPLES

The water tasted of metal.

Don't add salt until you've tasted the food.

The pizza tastes delicious.

salty [sɔːlti] containing salt or tasting of salt

savory [seɪvəri] having a salty flavor rather than a sweet one (*In British English, use **savoury***)

savoury (BRIT) see **savory**

sour [saʊər] 1 with a sharp taste like the taste of a lemon

2 tasting bad; not fresh; *sour milk*

stale [steɪl]

no longer fresh; *stale bread*

sweet [swi:t]

containing a lot of sugar

thirsty [θɜ:rsti]

wanting to drink something

tinned (*BRIT*)

see **canned**

PHRASES

Can I take your order?

used by a waiter to ask what you would like to eat

Cheers!

you say “Cheers!” to each other as you lift up your glasses to drink

Enjoy your meal!

you say “Enjoy your meal!” to someone just before they begin to eat

Is everything all right?

used by a waiter to ask if you are enjoying your food

friends and family

NOUNS

acquaintance	[əkwə <u>ɪ</u> ntəns]	someone you have met, but that you don't know well
adult	[əd <u>ʌ</u> lt]	a fully grown person or animal
aunt	[<u>æ</u> nt, <u>ɑ</u> nt]	the sister of your mother or father, or the wife of your uncle
auntie	[<u>æ</u> nti, <u>ɑ</u> nti]	[INFORMAL] aunt
baby	[be <u>ɪ</u> bi]	a very young child
baby boy	[be <u>ɪ</u> bi b <u>ɔɪ</u>]	a very young boy
baby girl	[be <u>ɪ</u> bi g <u>ɜː</u> rl]	a very young girl
bachelor	[bæt <u>ʃ</u> ələr]	a man who has never married
boy	[b <u>ɔɪ</u>]	a male child
boyfriend	[b <u>ɔɪ</u> frɛnd]	a man or a boy that someone is having a romantic relationship with
brother	[br <u>ʌ</u> ðər]	a boy or a man who has the same parents as you

brother-in-law	[brʌðər ɪn lɔ]	the brother of your husband or wife, or the man who is married to your sister.
(PL) brothers-in-law	[brʌðərz ɪn lɔ]	
child	[tʃaɪld]	a young boy or girl, someone's son or daughter
(PL) children	[tʃɪldrən]	
Christian name	[krɪstʃən neɪm]	same as first name
couple	[kʌpəl]	two people who are married or having a romantic relationship
cousin	[kʌzən]	the child of your uncle or your aunt
dad	[dæd]	[INFORMAL] 1 father; <i>This is my dad.</i> 2 a word you use when you are talking to your father; <i>Hi, Dad!</i>
daughter	[dɔtər]	a person's female child

EXAMPLES

He was just a casual acquaintance.

I'm going to stay with my auntie for the holidays.

Hannah is going to have a baby.

Congratulations on the birth of your baby boy!

Do you have any brothers or sisters?

I have one brother and one sister.

daughter-in-law	[dɒtər ɪn lɔ]	the wife of your son
(PL) daughters-in-law	[dɒtərz ɪn lɔ]	
family	[fæmɪli, fæmli]	a group of people who are related to each other, usually parents and their children
father	[fɑðər]	your male parent
father-in-law	[fɑðər ɪn lɔ]	the father of your husband or wife
(PL) fathers-in-law	[fɑðərz ɪn lɔ]	
fiancé	[fiənsɪ, fiənsɪ]	the man that a woman is going to marry
fiancée	[fiənsɪ, fiənsɪ]	the woman that a man is going to marry
first name	[fɜrst neɪm]	the name that you were given

		when you were born
friend	[frɛnd]	someone who you like and know well
girl	[gɜrl]	a female child
girlfriend	[gɜrlfrɛnd]	a girl or woman who someone is having a romantic relationship with
grandchild	[græntʃaɪld]	the child of your son or daughter
(PL) grandchildren	[græntʃɪldrən]	
granddaughter	[grændɔtər]	the daughter of your son or daughter
grandfather	[grænfɑðər]	the father of your father or mother
grandma	[grænmə]	[INFORMAL] 1 grandmother; <i>My grandma lives with us.</i> 2 a word you use when you are talking to your grandmother; <i>Look, Grandma!</i>
grandmother	[grænmlðər]	the mother of your father or mother

grandpa [grænpɑ] [INFORMAL] **1** grandfather; *My grandpa is nearly 70.*
2 a word you use when you are talking to your grandfather;
Hello, Grandpa!

EXAMPLES

May I introduce my fiancée, Cheryl Ferguson?

How many grandchildren have you got?

I visit my grandma every weekend.

My grandmother is dead.

grandparents [grænd-pərənts, -pær-] the parents of your mother or father

grandson [grænsʌn] the son of your son or daughter

grown-up [grəʊn ʌp] a child's word for an adult

husband [hʌzbənd] the man that a woman is married to

last name [læst neɪm] the name that you share with other members of your family

maiden name [meɪdən neɪm] a woman's surname before she married

mom [mɒm] [INFORMAL] **1** mother; *This is my*

		<i>mom.</i> 2 a word you use when you are talking to your mother; <i>Can I go out, Mom? (In British English, use mum)</i>
mother	[mʌðər]	your female parent
mother-in-law	[mʌðər in lɔ]	the mother of your husband or wife
(PL) mothers-in-law	[mʌðərz in lɔ]	
mum (BRIT)		see mom
name	[neɪm]	the word or words that you use to talk to a particular person, or to talk about them
neighbor	[neɪbər]	someone who lives near you (<i>In British English, use neighbour</i>)
neighbour (BRIT)		see neighbor
nephew	[nɛfju]	the son of your sister or brother
nickname	[nɪkneɪm]	an informal name that people use for a particular person
niece	[niːs]	the daughter of your sister or brother

old-age [ɔʊld eɪdʒ] the period of years towards the end of your life

only child (PL) [ɔʊnli tʃaɪld] a child who does not have any brothers or sisters

only children [ɔʊnli tʃɪldrən]

EXAMPLES

“What is your last name?” — “Smith.”

“What is your name?” — “Daniela.”

His name is Paolo.

I am an only child.

orphan [ɔrfən] a child whose parents are dead

parents [pɛərənts, pær-] your mother and father

relative [rɛlətɪv] a member of your family

single man [sɪŋgəl mæn] a man who is not married

(PL) **single men** [sɪŋgəl mɛn]

single parent [sɪŋgəl pɛərənt, pær-] someone who looks after their children alone, because the other parent does not live with them

single woman [sɪŋgəl] a woman who is not married

(PL) single	wʊmən]	
women	[sɪŋgəl wɪmɪn]	
sister	[sɪstər]	a girl or woman who has the same parents as you
sister-in-law	[sɪstər ɪn lɔ]	the sister of your husband or wife, or the
(PL) sisters-in-law	[sɪstərz ɪn lɔ]	woman who is married to your brother
son	[sʌn]	your male child
son-in-law	[sʌn ɪn lɔ]	the husband of your daughter
(PL) sons-in-law	[sʌnz ɪn lɔ]	
stepbrother	[stɛpbɹʌðər]	the son of your stepfather or stepmother
stepdaughter	[stɛpdɔtər]	a daughter who was born to your husband or wife during a previous relationship
stepfather	[stɛpfɑðər]	the man who has married someone's mother but who is not their father
stepmother	[stɛpmʌðər]	the woman who has married someone's father but who is not their mother

stepsister [stɛpsɪstər] the daughter of your stepfather or stepmother

stepson [stɛpsʌn] a son who was born to your husband or wife during a previous relationship

surname [sɜrneɪm] same as **last name**

EXAMPLES

I get along with my parents.

I don't have any brothers or sisters.

My older sister is at college.

I have three stepsisters.

teenager [tɪneɪdʒər] someone who is between thirteen and nineteen years old

triplets [trɪplɪts] three children who were born at the same time to the same mother

twins [twɪnz] two children who were born at the same time to the same mother

uncle [ʌŋkəl] the brother of your mother or father, or the husband of your

aunt

widow [wɪdɔ] a woman whose husband has died

widower [wɪdɔər] a man whose wife has died

wife [waɪf] the woman a man is married to

(PL) **wives** [waɪvz]

VERBS

adopt [ədɒpt] to take someone else's child into your own family and make them legally your son or daughter;
adopt a child

be born when a baby is born, it comes out of its mother's body at the beginning of its life

break up 1 if two people break up, their relationship ends; *Marianne and Pierre broke up last year.*
2 if a marriage or relationship breaks up, it ends; *Their marriage broke up.*
3 if you break up with your boyfriend, girlfriend, husband,

or wife, your relationship with that person ends; *I've broken up with Jamie.*

die [daɪ] to stop living

divorce [dɪvɔːrs] if one person divorces another, their marriage is legally ended

EXAMPLES

My father is a widower.

I was born in 1990.

She died in 1995.

fall out 1 if two people fall out, they have an argument; *We fell out.*
2 if you fall out with someone, you have an argument and stop being friendly with them; *Chris fell out with Mike.*

foster [fɒstər] to take a child into your family for a period of time, without becoming its legal parent; *foster a child*

get divorced if a man and woman get divorced, their marriage is

		legally ended
get married		<p>1 when two people get married they become husband and wife in a special ceremony; <i>John and Linda got married.</i></p> <p>2 when you get married to someone, you become their husband or wife in a special ceremony; <i>John got married to Linda.</i></p>
live	[lɪv]	to stay alive until you are a particular age; <i>live to the age of 94</i>
marry	[mæri]	to legally become someone's husband or wife in a special ceremony
give birth		when a woman gives birth, she produces a baby from her body
go out with someone		to have a romantic or sexual relationship with someone
grow up		to gradually change from a child into an adult
make friends		1 when two people make

friends, they begin a friendship
2 when you make friends with
someone, you begin a friendship
with them

make up

to become friends again after an
argument

split up

same as **break up**

EXAMPLES

I fell out with my girlfriend last week, but we've made up now.

She married David Nichols in 2008.

"Are you going out with John?" — "No; we're just good friends."

I grew up in France.

I just split up with my boyfriend.

ADJECTIVES

dead

[dɛd]

not alive

divorced

[dɪvɔːrst]

no longer legally married to
your former husband or wife

engaged

[ɪnɡeɪdʒd]

if two people are engaged, they
have agreed to marry each other

grown-up

[ɡrəʊn ʌp]

mature, and no longer
dependent on your parents or

		another adult
married	[mærid]	having a husband or wife
pregnant	[prɛgnənt]	having a baby or babies developing in your body
separated	[sɛpəreitɪd]	living apart from your husband or wife, but not divorced
single	[sɪŋgəl]	not married

IDIOMS

go back a long way		if two people go back a long way, they have known each other for a long time
just good friends		used to say that two people are not having a romantic relationship
your nearest and dearest		your close relatives and friends
something runs in the family		used to say that a characteristic or medical condition is often found in members of a particular family
you would not		used to say that you do not like

**give someone
the time of
day**

someone at all

EXAMPLES

My parents are divorced.

Singing runs in the family.

fruit, nuts, and vegetables

NOUNS

FRUIT

apple	[æp ^ə l]	a firm round fruit with green, red, or yellow skin; <i>apple pie</i> ; <i>cooking apples</i>
apricot	[eɪprɪkɒt]	a small, soft, round fruit with yellow flesh and a large seed inside; <i>apricot jam</i>
avocado	[ævəkə ^d ou]	a fruit that does not taste sweet, with dark green skin and a large seed in the middle
banana	[bənæ ⁿ ə]	a long curved fruit with yellow skin; <i>a bunch of bananas</i>
berry	[bɛ ^r i]	a small, round fruit that grows on a bush or a tree
cherry	[tʃɛ ^r i]	a small, round fruit with red skin
coconut	[kəʊkənʌt]	1 a very large nut with a hairy

		shell and white flesh
		2 the white flesh of a coconut
date	[deɪt]	a small, dark-brown, sticky fruit with a stone inside
fig	[fɪg]	a soft sweet fruit full of tiny seeds
fruit	[fruɪt]	the part of a plant that contains seeds, covered with a substance that you can often eat; <i>a piece of fruit; fresh fruit and vegetables</i>
grapefruit (PL)	[greɪpfru:t]	a large, round, yellow fruit that has a slightly sour taste
grapefruit, grapefruits		
grapes	[greɪpz]	small green or purple fruits that grow in bunches and are used to make wine; <i>a bunch of grapes</i>
lemon	[ləmən]	a yellow fruit with a very sour taste
mango	[mæŋɡoʊ]	a large, sweet, yellow or red fruit that grows on trees in hot countries; <i>a mango smoothie</i>

EXAMPLES

I always have a piece of fruit in my lunchbox.

He squeezed the lemon over his fish.

I like a slice of lemon in my tea.

melon	[mɛlən]	a large fruit with soft, sweet flesh and a hard green or yellow skin
nectarine	[nɛktərɪn]	a red and yellow fruit with a smooth skin
orange	[ɔrɪndʒ]	a round, juicy fruit with a thick, orange-colored skin
peach	[pitʃ]	a round fruit with a soft red and orange skin
pear	[pɛər]	a juicy fruit that is narrow at the top and wider at the bottom. Pears have white flesh and green, yellow, or brown skin.
peel	[pi:l]	the skin of a fruit such as a lemon or an apple, especially when it has been removed
pineapple	[paɪnæpəl]	a large fruit with sweet, yellow flesh and thick, rough, brown

		skin
pip (<i>BRIT</i>)		see seed
pit	[pɪt]	the large hard seed in the middle of a fruit such as a plum or a cherry; <i>a cherry pit</i> (<i>In British English, use stone</i>)
plum	[plʌm]	a small, sweet fruit with a smooth purple, red, or yellow skin and a large seed in the middle
raisin	[reɪzən]	a dried grape
raspberry	[ræzberi]	a small, soft, red fruit that grows on bushes; <i>raspberry jam</i>
rhubarb	[rʊbarb]	a plant with large leaves and long red stems that are cooked with sugar to make jam or desserts
seed	[si:d]	one of the small, hard pieces in a fruit such as an apple or an orange (<i>In British English, use pip</i>)
skin	[skɪn]	the outer part that covers a fruit

stone (BRIT)

see **pit**

strawberry [strɔ̃beri]

a small soft red fruit that has a lot of very small seeds on its skin; *strawberries and cream*

EXAMPLES

I'd like a pound of oranges, please.

It was a very sweet and juicy pear.

Can I have half a kilo of plums, please?

tomato [təmeɪtəʊ]

a soft red fruit that you can eat raw in salads or cook like a vegetable; *sliced/chopped tomatoes; sun-dried tomatoes; tomato sauce/soup/juice; tomato puree/paste*

NUTS

brazil nut [brəzɪl nʌt]

a curved nut with a hard dark-brown shell with three sides

cashew nut [kæʃu nʌt, kæʃu]

a small curved nut that is often eaten salted

chestnut [tʃɛsnʌt, -nət]

a reddish-brown nut with a shell

that has points on it; *roasted chestnuts*

hazelnut [hæzəlˈnʌt] a round nut with a hard shell

peanut [piːnʌt, -nət] a small round nut often eaten roasted and salted; *a packet of salted peanuts*

walnut [wɔːlnʌt, -nət] a nut that is hard and round, with a rough texture

VEGETABLES

aubergine *(BRIT)* see **eggplant**

beans [biːns] seeds or seed cases of a climbing plant, that are usually cooked before eating; *baked beans; green beans; broad beans; soy beans*

beet [biːt] a dark red root, eaten as a vegetable and in salads; *pickled beet (In British English, use beetroot)*

beetroot *(BRIT)* see **beet**

broccoli [brɒkəli] a vegetable with thick green

		stems and small green flowers on top
cabbage	[kæbɪdʒ]	a round vegetable with white, green, or purple leaves; <i>red cabbage; spring cabbages</i>
carrot	[kærət]	a long, thin, orange-colored vegetable; <i>grated carrot; raw carrot; carrot cake</i>
cauliflower	[kɒlɪflaʊər]	a large, round, white vegetable surrounded by green leaves; <i>steamed cauliflower</i>

EXAMPLES

Add the fruit and sprinkle with the chopped hazelnuts.

celery	[sɛləri]	a vegetable with long, pale-green sticks that you can cook or eat raw; <i>a stick of celery; celery sticks/stalks</i>
corn	[kɔrn]	a long round vegetable covered in small yellow seeds. The seeds are also called corn. (<i>In British English, use sweetcorn</i>)

courgette (BRIT)		see zucchini
cucumber	[ky <u>ʌ</u> kʌmbər]	a long dark-green vegetable that you eat raw; <i>sliced cucumber; tomatoes and cucumber; cucumber sandwiches</i>
eggplant	[ɛgplænt]	a vegetable with a smooth, dark purple skin (<i>In British English, use aubergine</i>)
garlic	[g <u>ɑː</u> rlɪk]	a plant like a small onion with a strong flavor, that you use in cooking; <i>garlic bread; chopped/crushed garlic</i>
herb	[h <u>ɜː</u> rb]	a plant whose leaves are used in cooking to add flavor to food; <i>dried/fresh herbs; mixed herbs</i>
leek	[li <u>k</u>]	a long, thin vegetable that is white at one end and has long green leaves
lentils	[lɛntɪlz, -təlz]	round flat seeds that are dried and then soaked and cooked before eating; <i>red/green lentils; lentil soup</i>

lettuce	[lɛtɪs]	a plant with large green leaves that is eaten mainly in salads; <i>lettuce leaves</i>
mushroom	[mʌʃrʊm]	a plant with a short stem and a round top that you can eat; <i>sliced mushrooms; wild mushrooms; button mushrooms</i>
olive	[plɪv]	a small green or black fruit with a bitter taste; <i>olive oil; green/black olives</i>
onion	[ʌnyən]	a round vegetable with many layers, that has a strong, sharp smell and taste; <i>sliced/chopped onion; fried onion; red onions; pickled onions</i>

EXAMPLES

When the oil is hot, add the garlic.

Fry the mushrooms in a little olive oil and add the chopped herbs.

parsley	[pɑːrsli]	a herb with small green leaves that you use in cooking; <i>chopped parsley</i>
----------------	-----------	--

peas	[pɪz]	very small round green seeds that grow in long narrow cases (called pods) and are cooked and eaten as a vegetable; <i>frozen green peas</i>
pepper	[pɛpər]	a hollow green, red, or yellow vegetable with seeds inside it; <i>chopped/roasted peppers; sweet/chili peppers</i>
potato	[pəteɪtəʊ]	a hard, round, white vegetable with brown or red skin, that grows under the ground; <i>roast potatoes; baked/jacket potatoes; mashed/boiled/fried potatoes</i>
pumpkin	[pʌmpkɪn]	a large, round, orange vegetable with a thick skin; <i>pumpkin seeds; pumpkin pie; pumpkin soup</i>
spinach	[spɪnɪtʃ]	a vegetable with large dark green leaves
squash	[skwɒʃ]	a large vegetable with thick skin and hard flesh
sweetcorn (BRIT)		see corn

turnip	[tɜːnɪp]	a round white vegetable that grows under the ground
vegetable	[vɛdʒtəbəl, vɛdʒɪ-]	a plant that you can cook and eat; <i>roasted vegetables; fruit and vegetables; vegetable oil</i>
zucchini	[zʊkɪni]	a long, thin vegetable with a dark green skin (<i>In British English, use courgette</i>)

ADJECTIVES

ripe	[raɪp]	used for describing fruit that is ready to eat
vegetarian	[vɛdʒɪtɛəriən]	not containing meat or fish; <i>a vegetarian diet/dish/meal</i>

EXAMPLES

Thinly slice two red or green peppers.

Choose firm but ripe fruit.

health

NOUNS

accident	[əksɪdənt]	an occasion when something bad happens to a person by chance, causing injury or death
ache	[eɪk]	a steady pain in a part of your body
AIDS	[eɪdz]	a disease that destroys the body's ability to fight other diseases
ambulance	[æmbyələns]	a vehicle for taking people to the hospital; <i>call an ambulance</i>
appointment	[əpɔɪntmənt]	an arrangement to see someone such as a doctor at a particular time
aspirin	[æspərɪn-prɪn]	a mild drug that reduces pain; <i>take an aspirin</i>
bandage	[bændɪdʒ]	a long piece of cloth that is wrapped around an injured part

		of your body to protect or support it
Band-aid	[bænd eɪd]	a piece of sticky material used for covering small cuts on your body (<i>In British English, use plaster</i>)
bruise	[brʊz]	a purple mark that appears on a part of your body when you injure it
cancer	[kænsər]	a serious disease that makes groups of cells in the body grow when they should not
chickenpox	[tʃɪkɪnpɒks]	a disease that gives you a high temperature and red spots that itch
cold	[kəʊld]	an illness that makes liquid flow from your nose, and makes you cough
condom	[kɒndəm]	a rubber covering that a man wears on his penis during sex to stop a woman from becoming pregnant and to protect against disease; <i>use a condom</i>

EXAMPLES

The boy was injured in an accident at a swimming pool.

She made an appointment with her doctor.

How did you get that bruise on your arm?

I've got a cold.

cough	[kɔ̃f]	an illness that makes you cough
crutch	[krʌtʃ]	a stick that you put under your arm to help you to walk if you have hurt your leg or your foot
dentist	[dɛntɪst]	a person whose job is to examine and treat people's teeth
the dentist's	[ðə dɛntɪsts]	the place where a dentist works
diarrhea	[daɪərɪə]	an illness that makes all the waste products come out of your body as liquid
diet	[daɪt]	the type of food that you regularly eat; <i>a balanced diet; a healthy diet</i>
doctor	[dɒktər]	a person whose job is to treat people who are sick or injured
the doctor's	[ðə dɒktərz]	the place where a doctor works

drug	[drʌg]	a chemical that is used as a medicine
earache	[ɪəreɪk]	a pain inside your ear
ER	[i ɑr]	short for “emergency room”: the part of a hospital where people who have severe injuries or sudden illness go for emergency treatment
first aid kit	[fɜrst eɪd kɪt]	a collection of bandages and medicines for giving first aid when someone has an injury
flu	[flu]	short for “influenza”: an illness that is like a very bad cold
germ	[dʒɜrm]	a very small living thing that can cause disease or illness
headache	[hɛdeɪk]	a pain in your head
health	[hɛlθ]	the condition of a person’s body; <i>in good health; health problems</i>

EXAMPLES

I’ve got a bad cough.

I can walk without crutches now.

I’m going to the dentist’s after work.

I went to the doctor’s today.

This chemical is used for killing germs.

I have a headache.

heart attack	[hɑrt ətæk]	an occasion when someone's heart begins to beat irregularly or stops completely; <i>have a heart attack</i>
hospital	[hɒspɪtəl]	a place where doctors and nurses care for people who are sick or injured
illness	[ɪlnɪs]	1 a particular disease or a period of bad health 2 the state of being sick
injection	[ɪndʒɛkʃən]	medicine that is put into your body using a special type of needle; <i>have an injection</i>
measles	[mɪzəlz]	an illness that gives you a high fever and red spots on your skin
medicine	[mɛdɪsɪn]	1 the treatment of illness and injuries by doctors and nurses; <i>a career in medicine</i> 2 a substance that you use to

		treat or cure an illness; <i>take medicine</i>
nurse	[nɜːrs]	a person whose job is to care for people who are sick or injured
ointment	[ɔɪntmənt]	a smooth, thick substance that you put on sore or damaged skin
operation	[ɒpəreɪʃən]	the process of cutting open a patient's body in order to remove, replace or repair a part
pain	[peɪn]	an unpleasant feeling that you have in a part of your body, because of illness or an injury; <i>chest/back pain</i>
patient	[peɪʃənt]	a person who receives medical treatment from a doctor
pharmacy	[fɑːməsi]	a place where you can get medicine
pill	[pɪl]	a small, solid, round piece of medicine that you swallow; <i>take a pill</i>
plaster (BRIT)		see Band-aid

EXAMPLES

She is recovering from a serious illness.

He was away from work because of illness.

The medicine saved his life.

Where do you feel the pain?

poison	[pɔɪzən]	a substance that harms or kills people if they swallow or touch it
pregnancy	[prɛɡnənsi]	the condition of having a baby or babies developing in your body
prescription	[prɪskrɪpʃən]	a piece of paper on which a doctor writes an order for medicine
pulse	[pʌls]	the regular beat of your heart that you can feel when you touch your wrist
scar	[skɑr]	a mark that is left on the skin by an old wound
scratch	[skrætʃ]	a small cut made by a sharp object
sling	[slɪŋ]	a piece of cloth that you wear

		around your neck and arm, to hold up your arm when it is broken or injured
sore throat	[sɔː θrəʊt]	a pain in your throat
splinter	[splɪntər]	a thin, sharp piece of wood or glass that has broken off from a larger piece
spoonful	[spuːnfʊl]	an amount of food that a spoon holds; <i>a spoonful of medicine</i>
stomachache	[stʌməkeɪk]	a pain in your stomach
stress	[stres]	an unpleasant feeling of worry caused by difficulties in life; <i>suffer from stress</i>
sunburn	[sʌnbɜːn]	pink sore skin caused by too much time in the sun; <i>suffer sunburn</i>
surgery	[sɜːrdʒəri]	a process in which a doctor cuts open a patient's body in order to repair, remove or replace a diseased or damaged part; <i>knee surgery; heart surgery</i>

EXAMPLES

We keep a record of your weight gain during pregnancy.

Press very gently until you can feel the pulse.

She's got her arm in a sling.

I've got a sore throat.

I've got a splinter in my toe.

I have a stomachache.

It will need surgery.

tablet	[tæblɪt]	a small solid piece of medicine that you swallow; <i>take a sleeping tablet</i>
temperature	[tɛmprətʃər -tʃʊər]	how hot someone's body is
thermometer	[θɜːrmɒmɪtər]	an instrument that measures your body's temperature
wheelchair	[wiːltʃɛər]	a chair with wheels that you use if you cannot walk very well
wound	[waʊnd]	damage to part of your body caused by a gun or something sharp like a knife; <i>head wounds</i>
X-ray	[ɛks reɪ]	1 a process in which a picture is taken of the bones or organs inside your body; <i>have an X-ray</i>

2 a picture of the bones or organs inside your body

VERBS

be ill (*BRIT*)

see **be sick**

be on a diet

to eat special types of food, or eat less food than usual

be sick

to not be in good health (*In British English, use be ill*)

bleed [blɪd]

if a part of your body bleeds, you lose blood from it

break [brɛk]

to make a bone in your body separate into pieces, by hitting it or falling on it

breathe [briːð]

to take air into your lungs and let it out again

bruise [bruːz]

to injure a part of your body so that a purple mark appears there

EXAMPLES

The baby's temperature continued to rise.

The wound is healing well.

I was too sick to go to work.

His nose was bleeding heavily.

He's broken his arm.

burn	[bɜrn]	if you burn a part of your body, you injure it with something hot
catch a cold		to become sick with a cold
cough	[kɔf]	to suddenly force air out of your throat with a noise
cure	[kyʊər]	to make someone become well again
cut	[kʌt]	if you cut a part of your body, you injure it with something sharp, such as a knife
die	[daɪ]	to stop living
faint	[feɪnt]	to become unconscious for a short time
feel better		to feel less sick than before
feel sick		to feel unwell
get better		to recover from an illness
have a temperature		to have a body temperature that is higher than it should be

hurt	[hɜrt]	to damage a part of your body, causing pain
itch	[ɪtʃ]	to have an unpleasant feeling on your skin that makes you want to scratch it
look after someone		to take care of someone who is sick
lose weight		to become thinner
pass out		to become unconscious for a short time
put on weight		to become fatter
rest	[rɛst]	to spend some time relaxing after doing something tiring
scratch	[skrætʃ]	to rub your fingernails against the skin on a part of your body

EXAMPLES

I've burnt myself.

Dry your hair so you don't catch a cold.

I cut my finger when I was slicing vegetables.

He is feeling much better today.

The thought of food made him feel sick.

Doctors have said that he may not get better.

I fell over and hurt myself.

Ouch! That hurts!

I put on a lot of weight and my symptoms got worse.

sneeze [sn̩ɪʒ] to suddenly take in your breath and then blow it down your nose noisily, for example, because you have a cold

take someone's temperature to use a thermometer to measure the temperature of someone's body

treat [tri:t] to try to make a patient well again

twist [twɪst] to injure a part of your body by turning it too suddenly

vomit [vɒmɪt] if you vomit, food and drink comes up from your stomach and out through your mouth

ADJECTIVES

bleeding [bl̩ɪdɪŋ] losing blood as a result of injury or illness; *bleeding gums*

cold [kəʊld] feeling uncomfortable because you are not warm enough

feverish	[fɪvəriʃ]	feeling ill and very hot
fit	[fɪt]	healthy and strong; <i>keep fit</i>
healthy	[hɛlθi]	1 well, and not often sick 2 good for your health
ill	[ɪl]	not in good health
in a cast	[In ə kæst]	with a hard white cover around your leg or arm to protect a broken bone
injured	[ɪndʒəd]	if you are injured, part of your body is damaged
in plaster (BRIT)		see in a cast
off sick (BRIT)		see out sick

EXAMPLES

Doctors treated the boy for a minor head wound.

He twisted an ankle playing football.

The headache was accompanied by vomiting.

People need to exercise to be healthy.

Try to eat a healthy diet.

I had my arm in a cast for two months.

No one was seriously injured.

out sick	[aʊt sɪk]	not at work because you are unwell (In British English, use off sick)
painful	[peɪnfəl]	causing pain; <i>painful joints</i>
pregnant	[prɛɡnənt]	having a baby or babies developing in your body
sick	[sɪk]	unwell; <i>a sick child</i>
sore	[sɔːr]	painful and uncomfortable
sweaty	[swɛti]	covered with sweat (= liquid that forms on your body when you are hot)
tired	[taɪəd]	feeling that you want to rest or sleep
uncomfortable	[ʌnkʌmftəbəl -kʌmfərtə-]	feeling slight pain or discomfort
unconscious	[ʌnkɒnʃəs]	not awake and not aware of what is happening around you because of illness or a serious injury
wounded	[wʌndɪd]	injured by an attack

IDIOMS

**(as) right as
rain**

completely well or healthy again
after an illness

off-color

slightly unwell; *feel off-color* (In
British English, use off-colour)

off-colour
(BRIT)

see **off-color**

**under the
weather**

feeling slightly unwell

EXAMPLES

I sometimes feel uncomfortable after eating in the evening.

I was still feeling a bit under the weather.

hotels

NOUNS

alarm call (BRIT)		see wake-up call
baggage	[bæɡɪdʒ]	same as luggage
bar	[bɑr]	a place where you can buy and drink alcoholic drinks; <i>the hotel bar</i>
bath (BRIT)		see bathtub
bathroom	[bæθrʊm]	a room that contains a toilet
bathtub	[bæθtʌb]	a long container that you fill with water and sit or lie in to wash your body (<i>In British English, use bath</i>)
bed and breakfast	[bɛd ənd brɛkfəst]	1 a small hotel offering rooms and breakfast, but not lunch or dinner 2 if the price at a hotel includes bed and breakfast, it includes

		breakfast, but not lunch or dinner
bellhop	[bɛlhɒp]	a person whose job is to carry people's luggage (<i>In British English, use porter</i>)
bill	[bɪl]	a document that shows how much money you must pay for something
breakfast	[brɛkfəst]	the first meal of the day
chambermaid	[tʃeɪmbərmeɪd]	a woman who cleans the bedrooms in a hotel
complaint	[kəmpleɪnt]	when you say that you are not satisfied; <i>make a complaint</i>
deposit	[dɪpɒzɪt]	a part of the full price of something that you pay when you agree to buy it
double room	[dʌbəl ru:m]	a bedroom for two people

EXAMPLES

I'd like a room with a bathtub.

Double rooms cost \$180 per night for bed and breakfast.

We stayed in a small bed and breakfast by the sea.

They paid the bill and left the hotel.

What time is breakfast served?

The chambermaid came to clean the room.

No booking will be accepted unless the deposit is paid.

Would you like a single or a double room?

elevator	[ˈɛlɪvətər]	a machine that carries people or things up and down inside tall buildings; <i>take/use the lift (In British English, use lift)</i>
en-suite bathroom	[ɛn swit bæθrʊm]	a bathroom that is joined to a bedroom and can only be reached by a door in the bedroom
entrance	[ˈɛntrəns]	the door or gate that you use to go into a place; <i>the main entrance; the hotel entrance</i>
facilities	[fəˈsɪlɪtɪz]	something such as rooms, buildings, or pieces of equipment that are used for a particular purpose
fire escape	[ˈfaɪər ɪskeɪp]	a metal staircase on the outside of a building, which can be used to escape from the building if there is a fire
floor	[flɔːr]	one of the levels of a building;

*the ground/first/second/third
floor*

foyer	[fɔɪər, fɔɪeɪ fweɪeɪ]	the large area inside the doors of a hotel where people meet or wait
guest	[ɡɛst]	someone who is staying in a hotel; <i>hotel guests</i>
guest house	[ɡɛst haʊs]	a small hotel; <i>stay in a guest house</i>
hotel	[həʊtəl]	a building where people pay to sleep and eat meals
key	[ki]	a specially shaped piece of metal that opens or closes a lock
key card	[ki kɑːd]	a small plastic card that you can use instead of a key to open a door in some hotels
lift (BRIT)		see elevator
luggage	[lʌɡɪdʒ]	the bags that you take with you when you travel

EXAMPLES

Every room has an en-suite bathroom.

The hotel has excellent sports facilities.

All rooms have tea and coffee-making facilities.

Our hotel room was on the third floor.

Ali stayed the night in a small hotel near the harbor.

Do you have any luggage?

manager	[mænɪdʒər]	a person who controls all or part of a business or organization; a <i>hotel manager</i>
minibar	[mɪnɪbər]	a small fridge containing drinks in a hotel room
passport	[pæspɔːt]	an official document that you have to show when you enter or leave a country
porter (BRIT)		see bellhop
price	[praɪs]	the amount of money that you have to pay for something
rate	[reɪt]	the amount of money that goods or services cost
reception	[rɪsɛpʃən]	the desk in a hotel that you go to when you first arrive
receptionist	[rɪsɛpʃənɪst]	in a hotel, a person whose job is to answer the telephone and deal with guests

restaurant	[rɛstərənt, -tərənt, -trənt]	a place where you can buy and eat a meal; <i>the hotel restaurant</i>
room	[rʊm]	a separate area inside a building that has its own walls
room number	[rʊm nʌmbər]	the number given to a bedroom in a hotel
room service	[rʊm sɜrvɪs]	in a hotel, a service that provides meals or drinks for guests in their room; <i>order room service</i>
safe	[seɪf]	a strong metal box with a lock, where you keep money or other valuable things
shower	[ʃaʊər]	a piece of equipment that covers you with water when you stand under it to wash yourself
single room	[sɪŋgəl rʊm]	a room for one person

EXAMPLES

Does that price include breakfast?

The hotel offers a special weekend rate.

I checked in at reception.

I'd prefer a room overlooking the sea.

You are advised to deposit valuables in the hotel safe.

stay	[steɪ]	a period of living in a place for a short time
suitcase	[sɪtkes]	a case for carrying your clothes when you are traveling
swimming pool	[swɪmɪŋ puːl]	a large hole filled with water that people can swim in; <i>the hotel swimming pool</i>
tip	[tɪp]	money that you give someone to thank them for a job they have done for you
view	[vyu]	everything that you can see from a place
youth hostel	[juːθ hɒstəl]	a cheap place where people can stay when they are traveling
wake-up call	[weɪkʌp kɔːl]	a telephone call that is intended to wake you up (<i>In British English, use alarm call</i>)

VERBS

book	[bʊk]	to arrange to stay in a hotel room
make a		to make an arrangement for a

reservation		room in a hotel to be kept for you
stay	[steɪ]	to live somewhere for a short time
tip	[tɪp]	to give someone some money to thank them for a job they have done for you

ADJECTIVES

accessible	[æksɛsɪbəl]	easy for people to reach or enter
luxury	[lʌkʃəri, lʌgʒə-]	comfortable, beautiful, and expensive; <i>a luxury hotel</i>

EXAMPLES

Please contact the hotel reception if you have any problems during your stay.

He handed the bellhop a tip.

From our hotel room we had a spectacular view of the sea.

Could I have a wake-up call at 5:30 tomorrow morning, please?

I'd like to book a room.

Samir made a reservation for two rooms at the hotel.

Wolfgang stayed at The Park Hotel, Milan.

Anna tipped the chambermaid.

The hotel is wheelchair accessible.

**three-/four-/five-
etc. star**

used for talking about the
quality of a hotel, which is
indicated by a number of star-
shaped symbols

PHRASES

**“Do not
disturb”**

if a sign on a hotel room door
says “Do not disturb,” it means
that the person inside does not
want to be interrupted

“Vacancies”

if a sign outside a hotel says
“Vacancies,” it means that there
are some rooms available

EXAMPLES

They own a three-star hotel.

houses and homes

NOUNS

accommodation

(BRIT)

see **housing**

address

[ə'dres]

the number of the building, the name of the street, and the town or city where you live or work; *postal address*

apartment

[əpɑrtmənt]

a set of rooms for living in, usually on one floor and part of a larger building (*In British English, use flat*)

attic

[ætik]

a room at the top of a house, just under the roof

balcony

[bælkəni]

a place where you can stand or sit on the outside of a building, above the ground

basement

[beɪsmənt]

a part of a building below ground level; *a basement apartment*

bathroom	[bæθrum]	a room that contains a toilet
bedroom	[bedrum]	a room that is used for sleeping in
building	[bɪldɪŋ]	a structure that has a roof and walls; <i>an office building</i>
ceiling	[si:liŋ]	the top inside part of a room; <i>low/high ceilings</i>
cellar	[selər]	a room under a building; <i>a wine cellar</i>
chimney	[tʃɪmni]	a pipe above a fire that lets the smoke travel up and out of the building
conservatory	[kənsɜ:vətəri]	a glass room built onto a house
cottage	[kɒtɪdʒ]	a small house, usually in the country
detached house	[dɪtætʃt haʊs]	a house that is not joined to any other building
dining room	[daɪnɪŋ rum]	the room in a house where people have their meals
door	[dɔːr]	a piece of wood, glass, or metal that fills an entrance

EXAMPLES

Please give your full name and address.

“What’s your address?” — “It’s 24 Cherry Road, Chicago, IL 60657.”

They are renting a two-bedroom apartment.

I knocked at the front door, but there was no answer.

doorbell	[dɔːrbɛl]	a button next to a door that makes a noise when you press it to tell the people inside that you are there
doorstep	[dɔːrstɛp]	a step in front of a door outside a building
driveway	[draɪvweɪ]	a small road that leads from the street to the front of a building
elevator	[ɛlɪvətər]	a machine that carries people or things up and down inside tall buildings (<i>In British English, use lift</i>)
entrance	[ɛntrəns]	the door or gate where you go into a place
estate agent (BRIT)		see realtor
flat (BRIT)		see apartment

floor	[flɔːr]	<p>1 the part of a room that you walk on</p> <p>2 all the rooms that are on a particular level of a building; <i>the ground/first/second floor</i></p>
front door	[frʌnt dɔːr]	the main door of a house or other building, that is usually in the wall that faces a street
garage	[gəˈrɑːʒ]	a building where you keep a car
garden (BRIT)		see yard
gate	[geɪt]	a type of door that you use to enter the area around a building
hall	[hɔːl]	the area inside the main door of a house that leads to other rooms
home	[həʊm]	the house or apartment where someone lives
house	[haʊs]	a building where people live
housing	[ˈhaʊzɪŋ]	buildings or rooms where people live or stay; <i>rented housing (In British English, use accommodation)</i>

kitchen [kɪtʃən] a room that is used for cooking

EXAMPLES

The doorbell rang.

I went and sat on the doorstep.

There were no seats, so we sat on the floor.

The bathroom was on the second floor.

They have a lovely home in the country.

I live in a three-bedroom house.

I'm having a party at my house tomorrow night.

landing [lændɪŋ] the flat area at the top of the stairs in a house

landlady [lændleɪdi] a woman who owns a building and allows people to live there in return for rent

landlord [lændlɔːrd] a man who owns a building and allows people to live there in return for rent

lift (BRIT) *see* **elevator**

living room [lɪvɪŋ rum] a room where people sit together and talk or watch television

owner [əʊnər] the person that something

		belongs to; <i>property owners</i>
patio	[pæti <u>o</u>]	a flat area next to a house, where people can sit and relax or eat
porch	[pɔrtʃ]	a covered area with a roof and sometimes walls at the entrance to a building
property	[prɒpərti]	a building and the land around it; <i>buy/sell property; private property</i>
realtor	[riæltər, -tɔr]	someone who works for a company selling houses and land (<i>In British English, use estate agent</i>)
rent	[rɛnt]	money that you pay to live in a house or apartment that is owned by someone else
roof	[ru:f]	the top surface that covers a building
room	[rum]	a separate area inside a building that has its own walls
row house	[rou haus]	one of a row of houses that are joined together by both of their

side walls

(In British English, use **terraced house**)

semi-detached house [sɛmɪdɪtæt[tsɛmaɪ-]

a house that is joined to another house on one side by a shared wall

shutters [ʃʌtərz]

wooden or metal covers fitted on the outside of a window;
open/close the shutters

sitting room [sɪtɪŋ rʊm]

same as **living room**

spare room [spɛər rʊm]

a bedroom that is kept especially for visitors to sleep in

EXAMPLES

We have meals on the patio in the summer.

She worked hard to pay the rent on the apartment.

stairs [stɛərz]

a set of steps inside a building that go from one level to another; *climb the stairs*

step [stɛp]

a raised flat surface that you put your feet on in order to walk up

or down to a different level; go
up/down the steps

storey (*BRIT*)

see **story**

story [stɔːri]

one of the different levels of a
building;

(PL) **stories** *the top story* (*In
British English, use storey*)

study [stʌdi]

a room in a house that is used
for reading, writing, and
studying

tenant [tɛnənt]

someone who pays money to use
a house

terraced house
(*BRIT*)

see **row house**

wall [wɔːl]

one of the sides of a building or
a room

window [wɪndəʊ]

a space in the wall of a building
that has glass in it

yard [jɑːrd]

the part of the land by your
house where you grow flowers
and vegetables; *the front/
back yard* (*In British English, use
garden*)

VERBS

decorate	[dɛkəreɪt]	to put paint or paper on the walls of a room
live	[lɪv]	to have your home in a particular place
move		to change the place where you live <i>(In British English, use move house)</i>
move house <i>(BRIT)</i>		see move
own	[aʊn]	to have something that belongs to you
rent	[rɛnt]	to pay the owner of a house or apartment in order to be able to live in it yourself

EXAMPLES

Houses must not be more than two stories high.

They were decorating Claude's bedroom.

Where do you live?

When Dad got a new job, we had to move.

He owns an apartment in Paris.

She rents a house with three other women.

ADJECTIVES

downstairs	[daʊnstɛərz]	on a lower floor of a building; <i>a downstairs toilet</i>
furnished	[fɜːrnɪʃt]	containing furniture; <i>a furnished apartment; elegantly furnished rooms</i>
homeless	[həʊmlɪs]	having nowhere to live; <i>homeless people</i>
residential	[rɛzɪdɛnʃəl]	containing houses rather than offices or shops; <i>a residential area</i>
upstairs	[ʌpstɛərz]	on a higher floor of a building; <i>an upstairs window</i>

adverbs

at home	[æt həʊm]	in the place where you live
downstairs	[daʊnstɛərz]	on or to a lower floor of a building
home	[həʊm]	in or to the house or apartment where you live
next door	[nɛkst dɔːr]	in the next room or building

upstairs

[ʌpstɛərz]

on or to a higher floor of a building

PHRASES

“Make yourself at home”

used for telling someone that you want them to relax and feel comfortable in your home

“There’s no place like home.”

used for saying that your home is the place where you feel happiest and most comfortable

EXAMPLES

At least 100,000 people were left homeless by the earthquake.

She wasn't at home.

Nobody lives downstairs.

She went downstairs to the kitchen.

She wasn't feeling well and she wanted to go home.

Hi Mom! I'm home!

Who lives next door?

The children are upstairs.

He went upstairs and changed his clothes.

in the home

NOUNS

FURNITURE

armchair	[ɑrmtʃɛər]	a big comfortable chair that supports your arms
bed	[bɛd]	a piece of furniture that you lie on when you sleep; <i>a double/single bed</i>
bookcase	[bʊkkeɪs]	a piece of furniture with shelves that you keep books on
chair	[tʃɛər]	a piece of furniture for one person to sit on, with a back and four legs
chest of drawers	[tʃɛst əv drɔːz]	a piece of furniture with drawers in which you keep clothes
cot (BRIT)		see crib
crib	[krɪb]	a bed for a baby; <i>a baby crib (In British English, use cot)</i>

cupboard	[kʌbəd]	a piece of furniture with doors and shelves for storing things like food or dishes; <i>a kitchen cupboard</i>
desk	[dɛsk]	a table that you sit at to write or work
drawer	[drɔr]	the part of a desk, for example, that you can pull out and put things in; <i>open/close a drawer; a kitchen drawer; a desk drawer</i>
fireplace	[faɪəpleɪs]	the place in a room where you can light a fire
furniture	[fɜːnɪtʃər]	large objects in a room such as tables, chairs, or beds; <i>a piece of furniture</i>
lampshade	[læmpʃeɪd]	a covering that is fitted round an electric light bulb
mattress	[mætrɪs]	the thick, soft part of a bed that you lie on
shelf	[ʃɛlf]	a long flat piece of wood on a wall or in a cupboard that you can keep things on

EXAMPLES

We went to bed at about 10 p.m.

Ana was already in bed.

Francine rearranged all the furniture.

sofa	[s <u>ou</u> fə]	a long, comfortable seat with a back, that two or three people can sit on
stool	[st <u>u</u> l]	a seat with legs and no support for your arms or back
table	[t <u>e</u> ɪbəl]	a piece of furniture with a flat top that you put things on; <i>a wooden table; a kitchen table; a dining table</i>
wardrobe	[w <u>ɜ</u> rdroʊb]	a cupboard where you hang your clothes

APPLIANCES

appliance	[əpl <u>a</u> iəns]	a machine that you use to do a job in your home; <i>a kitchen appliance</i>
computer	[kəm <u>p</u> yʊtər]	an electronic machine that can store and deal with large

		amounts of information; <i>computer software</i>
cooker	[kʊkər]	a piece of kitchen equipment that is used for cooking food; <i>an electric cooker; a gas cooker</i>
dishwasher	[dɪʃwɒʃər]	a machine that washes and dries dishes; <i>load/unload the dishwasher</i>
freezer	[frɪzər]	a large container used for freezing food
fridge	[frɪdʒ]	a large container that is used for keeping food cool and fresh
hairdryer	[hɛədraɪər]	a machine that you use to dry your hair
heater	[hi:tər]	a piece of equipment that is used for making a room warm; <i>an electric heater; a gas heater</i>
iron	[aɪərn]	a piece of electrical equipment with a flat metal base that you heat and move over clothes to make them smooth
ironing board	[aɪərnɪŋ bɔ:rd]	a long board covered with cloth on which you iron clothes

kettle [kɛtəl] a metal container with a lid and a handle, that you use for boiling water; *put the kettle on*

EXAMPLES

He shut the dishwasher and switched it on.

James put the kettle on for a cup of tea.

lamp [læmp] a light that works using electricity or by burning oil or gas; *a bedside lamp*

microwave oven [maɪkrouweɪv
ʌvən] an oven that cooks food very quickly using electric waves

oven [ʌvən] a piece of equipment for cooking that is like a large metal box with a door

phone [foun] same as **telephone**; *The phone rang.; make a phone call; a phone number*

radio [reɪdiou] a piece of equipment that you use in order to listen to radio

programs; *listen to the radio; a radio program*

stereo	[stɛriou, stɪər-]	a machine that plays music, with two parts (= speakers) that the sound comes from
telephone	[tɛlɪfoun]	a piece of equipment that you use for speaking to someone who is in another place
television	[tɛlɪvɪʒən -vɪʒ-]	a piece of electrical equipment with a screen on which you watch moving pictures with sound; <i>a television program; a television show</i>
tumble-dryer	[tʌmbəl draɪər]	a machine that uses hot air to dry clothes
vacuum cleaner	[vækjum klinər, -yuəm]	an electric machine that sucks up dust and dirt from carpets
washing machine	[wɒʃɪŋ məʃɪn]	a machine that you use for washing clothes

OTHER THINGS IN THE HOME

bath (BRIT) see **bathtub**

bathtub [bæθtʌb] a long container that you fill

with water and sit or lie in to wash your body; *drain the bathtub* (In British English, use **bath**)

EXAMPLES

He switched on the lamp.

Put the potatoes in the oven for thirty minutes.

He never answers his phone.

Can I use your phone?

She's always on the phone.

What's on television tonight?

bin (BRIT)

see **garbage can**

blanket

[blæŋkɪt]

a large, thick piece of cloth that you put on a bed to keep you warm

blinds

[blaɪndz]

pieces of cloth or other material that you can pull down over a window to cover it; *close/open the blinds*

brush

[brʌʃ]

an object with a lot of bristles or hairs attached to it that you use for cleaning things

bucket	[bʌkɪt]	a round metal or plastic container with a handle, used for holding water; <i>a plastic bucket</i>
carpet	[kɑrpi:t]	a thick, soft covering for the floor; <i>a patterned carpet</i>
central heating	[sɛntrəl hi:tiŋ]	a heating system in which water or air is heated and passed round a building through pipes and radiators; <i>gas central heating</i>
clock	[klɒk]	an object that shows you what time it is
curtain	[kɜrtən]	a piece of material that hangs from the top of a window to cover it at night; <i>open/close the curtains</i>
cushion	[kʊʃən]	a bag of soft material that you put on a seat to make it more comfortable
dish soap	[dɪʃ sɒp]	liquid soap for cleaning dirty dishes (<i>In British English, use washing-up liquid</i>)

dust	[dʌst]	a fine powder of dry earth or dirt
duster	[dʌstər]	a cloth that you use for removing dust from furniture
duvet	[duveɪ]	a thick warm cover for a bed
garbage can	[gɑrbɪdʒ kæn]	a container that you put trash in (<i>In British English, use bin</i>)

EXAMPLES

The blinds were drawn to shut out the sun.

He filled the bucket with water.

She could hear the hall clock ticking.

She closed her bedroom curtains.

I took the letter and threw it in the garbage can.

key	[ki]	a specially shaped piece of metal that opens or closes a lock; <i>a door key</i>
laundry	[lɑndri]	1 clothes and other things that you are going to wash; <i>dirty laundry</i> 2 clothes and other things that you have just washed; <i>clean laundry</i>

laundry liquid	[lɑndri likwid]	liquid soap for washing laundry
light	[laɪt]	something such as an electric lamp that produces light; <i>switch on/off the light</i>
light bulb	[laɪt bʌlb]	the round glass part of an electric light that light shines from
lock	[lɒk]	the part of a door or a container that you use to make sure that no-one can open it. You can open a lock with a key.
mirror	[mɪrər]	a flat piece of special glass that you can see yourself in; <i>look in the mirror; a full-length mirror</i>
ornament	[ɔrnəmənt]	an attractive object that you use to decorate your home
pillow	[pɪləʊ]	a soft object that you rest your head on when you are in bed
plug	[plʌg]	1 the plastic object with metal pins that connects a piece of electrical equipment to the electricity supply 2 a round object that you use to

block the hole in a bath or a sink

radiator [rɛdiətər]
a metal object that is full of hot water or steam, and is used for heating a room

rubbish (BRIT) see **trash**

rug [rʌg]
a piece of thick cloth that you put on a small area of a floor

sheet [ʃit]
a large piece of cloth that you sleep on or cover yourself with in bed

EXAMPLES

Fold the laundry neatly after washing and drying it.

She turned on all the lights and drew the curtains.

I turned the key in the lock.

She put the plug in and turned on the taps.

shower [ʃəʊər]
a piece of equipment that covers you with water when you stand under it to wash yourself

sink [sɪŋk]
a large fixed container in a kitchen or a bathroom that you

		can fill with water; <i>a kitchen sink; a bathroom sink</i>
soap	[s <u>o</u> ʊp]	a substance that you use with water for washing yourself or for washing clothes; <i>Wash with soap and water.</i>
socket	[s <u>o</u> kɪt]	a small hole in a wall where you can connect electrical equipment to the power supply
switch	[sw <u>i</u> tʃ]	a small control for turning electricity on or off
tablecloth	[t <u>e</u> ɪb ^ə lklɒθ]	a cloth that you use to cover a table
tap	[t <u>æ</u> p]	an object that controls the flow of a liquid or a gas from a pipe; <i>turn on/off a tap</i>
tea towel	[t <u>i</u> taʊəl]	a cloth that you use to dry dishes after they have been washed
toilet	[t <u>ɔ</u> ɪlɪt]	a large bowl with a seat that you use when you want to get rid of waste from your body; <i>go to the toilet</i>

toothpaste	[tuθpeɪst]	a thick substance that you put on a toothbrush and use for cleaning your teeth
toy	[tɔɪ]	an object that children play with
trash	[træʃ]	things you do not want any more (<i>In British English, use rubbish</i>)
tray	[treɪ]	a flat piece of wood, plastic, or metal that is used for carrying and serving food and drinks
vase	[veɪs, vɑːz]	a container that is used for holding flowers
wallpaper	[wɔːlpɛɪpə]	colored or patterned paper that is used for decorating the walls of rooms
washing-up liquid (BRIT)		see dish soap

EXAMPLES

I turned the bathtub taps on.

VERBS

clean	[kli:n]	to remove the dirt from something; <i>clean the windows</i>
do housework		to do work in your home such as cleaning, washing, and ironing
do the laundry		to wash dirty clothes, towels, etc.
draw the curtains		to pull the curtains across a window in order to open or close them
dust	[dʌst]	to remove dust from furniture with a cloth
iron	[aɪərn]	to make clothes smooth using an iron; <i>an ironed shirt</i>
lock	[lɒk]	to close a door or a container with a key
plug something in		to connect a piece of electrical equipment to the electricity supply
put things away		to organize a place by putting things in their proper places (<i>In British English, use tidy things away</i>)

sweep	[swɪp]	to push dirt away from an area using a brush with a long handle; <i>sweep the floor</i>
switch something off		to stop electrical equipment from working by operating a switch
switch something on		to make electrical equipment start working by operating a switch
take a bath		to sit or lie in a bath filled with water to wash your body
take a shower		to wash yourself by standing under the water that comes from a shower

EXAMPLES

He brought soapy water and brushes to clean the floor.

Men are doing more housework nowadays.

She got out of bed and drew the curtains.

They had forgotten to lock the front door.

She plugged in the telephone.

It's time for the children to put away their toys.

She switched off the television.

He switched on the TV.

**throw
something in**

see **throw something in the
garbage the bin** (*BRIT*)

**throw
something in
the garbage**

to get rid of something that you
do not want by putting it in the
garbage (*In British English, use
throw something in the bin*)

**tidy things
away** (*BRIT*)

see **put things away**

vacuum [vækjum, -
yuəm]

to clean a room or a surface
using a piece of electrical
equipment that sucks up dirt
(called a vacuum cleaner)

industry

NOUNS

assembly line	[əsembli laɪn]	an arrangement of workers and machines in a factory where a product passes from one worker to another until it is finished
banking	[bæŋkɪŋ]	the business activity of banks and similar institutions
call center	[kɔl sɛntər]	an office where people work answering or making telephone calls for a company
catering	[keɪtərɪŋ]	the activity or business of providing food for people; a <i>catering business</i>
clothing industry	[kloʊðɪŋ ɪndəstri]	an industry that makes and sells clothes
construction	[kənstrʌkʃən]	the business of building things such as houses, roads, and bridges
engineering	[ɛndʒɪnɪərɪŋ]	the business of designing and

		constructing machines or structures such as roads and bridges
export	[ɛkspɔrt]	a product that one country sells to another country
factory	[fæktəri, -tri]	a large building where people use machines to make goods
farming	[fɑrmiŋ]	the business of growing crops or raising animals on a farm
film industry	[film ɪndəstri]	an industry that produces and sells films
fishing	[fɪʃɪŋ]	the business of catching fish
forestry	[fɔrɪstri]	the science of growing trees in forests
goods	[gʊdz]	things that you can buy or sell
heavy industry	[hɛvi ɪndəstri]	industry that uses large machines to produce raw materials or to make large objects

EXAMPLES

He works on an assembly line.

She wants a career in banking.

Italy's clothing industry is one of the most successful in the world.

Jason was an engineer with a large construction company.

Ghana's main export is cocoa.

They invested \$1 million in the British film industry.

Money can be exchanged for goods or services.

hospitality	[hɒspɪtæli	an industry that provides food,
industry	ndəstri]	drink, and entertainment
import	[ɪmpɔrt]	a product bought from another
		country for use in your own
		country
industrial	[ɪndʌstriəl sɛktər]	the part of a country's
sector		economy that produces things
		from raw materials
industry	[ɪndəstri]	1 the work of making things in
		factories; <i>Industry is growing.</i>
		2 all the people and activities
		involved in making a
		particular product or
		providing a particular service;
		<i>the Scottish tourist industry</i>
insurance	[ɪnʃʊərəns	an industry that provides
industry		insurance (= money given to
		someone if something bad

happens to them, in return for regular payments)

invention	[ɪnvɛnʃən]	1 something that someone has invented; <i>a new invention</i> 2 an occasion when something is invented; <i>the invention of the telephone</i>
leisure industry	[lɪʒər ɪndəstri, lɛʒ-]	an industry that provides activities for people to do when they are not working
light industry	[laɪt ɪndəstri]	industry in which only small items are made, for example household goods and clothes
machinery	[məʃɪnəri]	large pieces of electrical equipment that do a particular job
manufacturer	[mænyəfæktʃərə]	a company that makes large amounts of things
manufacturing	[mænyəfæktʃərɪŋ]	the business of making things in factories

EXAMPLES

John works in the hospitality industry.

Antigua has a small industrial sector producing clothing and electronic equipment.

The insurance industry lost billions of dollars because of the floods.

He works for the world's largest doll manufacturer.

During the 1980s, 300,000 workers in the manufacturing industry lost their jobs.

mass production	[mæ prədʌkʃən]	the production of something in large quantities, usually using machinery
mining	[maɪnɪŋ]	the business of getting valuable substances such as coal and gold from the ground; <i>coal mining</i>
oil drilling	[ɔɪl drɪlɪŋ]	the business of getting oil by making deep holes in the ground
output	[aʊtpʊt]	the amount that a person or a thing produces
plant	[plænt]	1 a factory; <i>a clothes manufacturing plant</i> 2 a place where power is produced; <i>a nuclear power plant</i>
private sector	[praɪvɪt sɛktər]	the part of a country's economy that the government does not control or own
processing	[prɒsɛsɪŋ]	the business of preparing raw materials before they are sold

product	[prɒdʌkt]	something that you make or grow in order to sell it
production	[prədʌkʃən]	1 the process of making or growing something in large amounts; <i>the production of oil</i> 2 the quantity of goods that you make or grow; <i>the volume of production</i>
production line	[prədʌkʃən laɪn]	an arrangement of machines in a factory where the products pass from one machine to another until they are finished
public sector	[pʌblik sɛktər]	the part of a country's economy that the government controls or gives money to
raw materials	[rɔː mətiəriəlz]	substances that have not been processed
research and development	[rɪsɜːrtʃ ənd dɪvɛləpmənt]	the activity of improving products and making new products
retailing	[rɪteɪlɪŋ]	the activity of selling goods directly to the public

EXAMPLES

This equipment allows the mass production of baby food.

Industry output has decreased.

We import raw materials and export industrial products.

service	[sɜrvɪs]	something that the public needs, such as transportation, hospitals, or energy supplies
service sector	[sɜrvɪs sɛktər]	the part of a country's economy that provide services
shipping	[ʃɪpɪŋ]	the business of transporting goods, especially by ship; <i>the international shipping industry</i>
supplier	[səplɑɪər]	a company that sells something such as goods or equipment to customers
textile industry	[tɛkstaɪl ɪndəstri]	an industry that makes cloth
tourism	[tuəɪzəm]	the business of providing hotels, restaurants, and activities for people who are on vacation
trade	[treɪd]	the activity of buying and selling goods
transportation	[trænsɜrteɪʃən]	the activity of taking goods or

people somewhere in a vehicle

VERBS

assemble	[əsembəl]	to fit the different parts of something together
deliver	[dɪlɪvər]	to take something to a particular place
export	[ɪkspɔrt]	to sell products to another country
import	[ɪmpɔrt]	to buy goods from another country for use in your own country
invent	[ɪnvɛnt]	to be the first person to think of something or to make it
manufacture	[mænyʊfæktʃər]	to make something in a factory

EXAMPLES

We are campaigning for better day care and school services.

They are one of the biggest food suppliers in the U.S.

Another 75,000 jobs will be lost in the textile industry.

Tourism is very important for the Spanish economy.

Workers were assembling airplanes.

The U.S. imports over half of its oil.

produce	[prədʊs]	to make or grow something
provide	[prəvʌɪd]	to make available something that people need or want
ship	[ʃɪp]	to send goods somewhere
subcontract	[sʌbkəntrækt]	to pay another company to do part of the work that you have been employed to do; <i>subcontract work to someone</i>
supply	[səplʌɪ]	to give someone an amount of something

ADJECTIVES

corporate	[kɔːrpəɪt, -praɪt]	relating to large companies; <i>the corporate sector</i>
domestic	[dəmɛstɪk]	happening or existing within one particular country
economic	[ɛkənɒmɪk, ɪk-]	relating to the organization of the money and industry of a country
financial	[faɪnænʃəl, fɪn-]	relating to money
foreign	[fɔːrɪn]	coming from a country that is not your own; <i>a foreign import</i>

industrial	[ɪndʌstriəl]	1 relating to industry; <i>industrial machinery</i> 2 used to describe a city or a country in which industry is very important; <i>an industrial country</i>
international	[ɪntərnæʃənəl]	involving different countries; <i>international trade</i>
modern	[mɒdərn]	new, or relating to the present time
private	[praɪvɪt]	not owned by the government; <i>a private company</i>
public	[pʌblɪk]	owned or controlled by the government; <i>a public company</i>

EXAMPLES

The company produces about 2.3 billion tons of steel a year.

We provide a wide range of products and services.

They supply many cities with gas.

We need to increase domestic oil production.

jobs and careers

accountant	[əkaʊntənt]	someone whose job is to keep financial records
architect	[ɑrkɪtekt]	someone whose job is to design buildings
attorney	[ətɜrni]	mainly in the U.S., a lawyer
builder	[bɪldər]	someone whose job is to build or repair houses and other buildings
businessman	[bɪznɪsmæn]	a man who works in a business
(PL) businessmen	[bɪznɪsmɛn]	
businesswoman	[bɪznɪswʊmən]	a woman who works in a business
(PL) businesswomen	[bɪznɪswɪmɪn]	
carer (BRIT)		see caretaker
caretaker	[kɛərteɪkər]	someone whose job is to look after another person (<i>In British</i>

English, use carer)

carpenter	[kɑrpɪntər]	someone whose job is to make and repair wooden things
cashier	[kæʃɪər]	someone whose job is to take customers' money in stores or banks
chef	[ʃɛf]	someone whose job is to cook in a restaurant
cleaner	[kli:nər]	someone whose job is to clean the rooms and furniture inside a building
clerk	[klɜ:k]	1 someone whose job is to work with numbers or documents in an office 2 someone who works in a store selling things to customers
cook	[kʊk]	someone who prepares and cooks food
decorator	[dɛkəreɪtər]	someone whose job is to paint houses and put wallpaper on walls
dentist	[dɛntɪst]	someone whose job is to examine and treat people's

teeth

EXAMPLES

She's a successful businesswoman who manages her own company.

Henry Harris is the head chef at The Fifth Floor Restaurant in London.

doctor	[dɒktər]	someone whose job is to treat people who are ill or injured
editor	[ɛdɪtər]	someone whose job is to check and correct texts
electrician	[ɪlɛktrɪʃən, ɪlɛk-]	someone whose job is to repair electrical equipment
engineer	[ɛndʒɪniər]	someone who designs, builds, and repairs machines, or structures such as roads, railroads, and bridges
factory worker	[fæktəri wɜrkər, -tri]	someone who works in a factory (= a large building where machines are used to make things)
farmer	[fɑrmər]	someone who owns or works on a farm
firefighter	[faɪərfaitər]	someone whose job is to put out

		fires
hairdresser	[hɛədrɛsər]	someone whose job is to cut and style people's hair
housewife	[haʊswaɪf]	a woman who does not have a
(PL)	[haʊswaɪvz]	paid job, but spends most of her
housewives		time looking after her house and family
journalist	[dʒɜːnəlɪst]	someone whose job is to write about news stories for newspapers, magazines, television, or radio
judge	[dʒʌdʒ]	the person in a court of law who decides how criminals should be punished
lawyer	[lɔːr, lɔːyər]	someone whose job is to advise people about the law and to represent them in court
librarian	[laɪbrɛəriən]	someone who works in a library (= a place where people can borrow books)
mailman	[meɪlmæn]	a man who collects and delivers
(PL) mailmen	[meɪlmɛn]	letters and packages (<i>In British English, use postman</i>)

manager	[mænidʒər]	someone who controls all or part of a business or organization
mechanic	[mikænik]	someone whose job is to repair machines and engines, especially car engines

EXAMPLES

She is a doctor.

miner	[maɪnər]	someone whose job is to work underground to obtain materials such as coal
monk	[mɒŋk]	a member of a group of religious men who live together in a special building
musician	[myuzɪʃən]	someone who plays a musical instrument
nanny	[næni]	someone whose job is to look after children in the children's own home
nun	[nʌn]	a member of a group of religious women who often live together

		in a special building
nurse	[nɜːrs]	someone whose job is to care for people who are ill or injured
optician	[ɒptɪʃən]	someone whose job is to make and sell glasses
painter	[peɪntər]	1 someone whose job is to paint walls, doors, or other parts of buildings 2 an artist who paints pictures
pilot	[paɪlət]	someone whose job is to control an aircraft
plumber	[plʌmə]	someone whose job is to put in and repair things like water and gas pipes, toilets, and bathtubs
police officer	[pəliːs ɔfisər]	a member of the police force
porter	[pɔːrtər]	someone whose job is to carry things, for example, people's luggage
postman (BRIT)		see mailman
priest	[praɪst]	someone who has religious duties in a place where people

		worship
programmer	[prɒʊgræməɹ]	someone whose job is to write programs for computers
professor	[prɒfɛsəɹ]	a teacher at a college or university, especially a teacher of the highest rank
publisher	[pʌblɪʃəɹ]	someone whose job is to prepare and print copies of books, newspapers, or magazines
rabbi	[ræbɑɪ]	a Jewish religious leader
receptionist	[rɪsɛpʃənɪst]	someone in a hotel or a large building whose job is to answer the telephone and greet visitors
sales clerk	[seɪlz klɜrk]	someone who works in a store selling things to customers (<i>In British English, use shop assistant</i>)
sales representative	[seɪlz rɛprɪzɛntətɪv]	someone whose job is to travel around an area and sell the goods of a particular company
salesman	[seɪlzmən]	a man whose job is to sell things
(PL) salesmen	[seɪlzmən]	

saleswoman (PL) saleswomen	[seɪlzwʊmən] [seɪlzwɪmɪn]	a woman whose job is to sell things
secretary	[sɛkrɪteri]	someone whose job is to type letters, answer the telephone, and do other office work
shop assistant (BRIT)		see sales clerk
social worker	[soʊʃəl wɜrkər]	someone whose job is to give help and advice to people who have serious family problems or financial problems
soldier	[soʊldʒər]	a member of an army
surgeon	[sɜrdʒən]	a doctor who is specially trained to perform operations
surveyor	[sərvɛɪər]	someone whose job is to examine the condition of a house, usually in order to give information to people who want to buy the house
teacher	[tɪtʃər]	someone whose job is to teach (= give lessons on a subject), usually in a school

technician	[tɛknɪʃən]	someone who works with scientific or medical equipment or machines
vet	[vɛt]	someone whose job is to treat ill or injured animals
waiter	[weɪtər]	a man whose job is to serve food in a restaurant

EXAMPLES

I was a teacher for 20 years.

waitress	[weɪtrɪs]	a woman whose job is to serve food in a restaurant
writer	[raɪtər]	someone whose job is to write books, stories, or articles

law

NOUNS

accident	[æksɪdənt]	an occasion when something bad happens to a person by chance, sometimes causing injury or death
assault	[əsoʊlt]	a physical attack on a person
attorney	[ətɜrni]	mainly in the U.S., a lawyer
burglar	[bɜrgləɹ]	someone who enters a building by force in order to steal things
burglary	[bɜrgləɹi]	the crime of entering a building by force and stealing things
charge	[tʃɑrdʒ]	a formal accusation that someone has committed a crime
corpse	[kɔrps]	a dead body
court	[kɔrt]	1 a place where a judge and a jury decide if someone has done something wrong 2 (BRIT) see courthouse

courthouse	[kɔːrθaʊs]	the building in which a court of law meets (<i>In British English, use court</i>)
crime	[kraɪm]	an illegal act; <i>commit a crime</i>
criminal	[krɪmɪnəl]	someone who does something illegal
drug	[drʌg]	a type of illegal substance that some people take because they enjoy its effects
drug dealer	[drʌg dɪlə]	someone who sells illegal drugs
evidence	[ˈeɪvɪdəns]	information that is used in a court in order to try to show that something really happened
fault	[fɔːlt]	if something bad is your fault, you made it happen

EXAMPLES

The police say the man's death was an accident.

At the police station, he was charged with assault.

They faced charges of murder.

She will appear in court later this month.

There is no evidence that he stole the money.

It's not my fault.

fine	[f <u>ai</u> n]	money that someone has to pay because they have done something wrong; <i>pay a fine</i>
fraud	[fr <u>ɔ</u> d]	the crime of getting money by not telling the truth
gang	[g <u>æ</u> ŋ]	an organized group of criminals
gun	[g <u>ʌ</u> n]	a weapon that shoots bullets
homicide	[h <u>ɒ</u> misaid, h <u>oʊ</u> mi-]	the crime of deliberately killing a person
hostage	[h <u>ɒ</u> stidʒ]	someone who is kept as a prisoner by someone who refuses to let them go until they get what they want
identity	[aɪ <u>d</u> ɛntiti]	who you are
jail	[dʒ <u>eɪ</u> l]	same as prison
judge	[dʒ <u>ʌ</u> dʒ]	the person in a court who decides how criminals should be punished
jury	[dʒ <u>ʊ</u> əri]	the group of people in a court who listen to the facts about a crime and decide if a person is guilty or not

law	[lɔ]	<p>1 a system of rules that a society or government develops to deal with things like crime; <i>break the law</i></p> <p>2 one of the rules in a system of law; <i>a new law</i></p>
lawyer	[lɔɪər, lɔyər]	someone whose job is to advise people about the law and to represent them in court
murder	[mɜrdər]	the crime of deliberately killing a person
murderer	[mɜrdərər]	someone who deliberately kills a person
passport	[pæspɔrt]	an official document that you have to show when you enter or leave a country

EXAMPLES

He got a fine for speeding.

She got a 100-dollar fine.

He used a different name to hide his identity.

Driving too fast is against the law.

police	[pəlɪs]	1 the organization that is
---------------	---------	-----------------------------------

		responsible for making sure that people obey the law
		2 men and women who are members of the police
police officer	[pəˈliːs ɔːfɪsər]	a member of the police force
police station	[pəˈliːs steɪʃən]	the local office of a police force in a particular area
prison	[ˈprɪzən]	a building where criminals are kept as punishment; <i>send someone to prison</i>
prisoner	[ˈprɪzənər]	someone who is in prison
proof	[pruːf]	something that shows that something else is true
reward	[rɪˈwɔːrd]	something that someone gives you because you have done something good
robbery	[ˈrɒbəri]	the crime of stealing money or property from a place
sentence	[ˈsentəns]	the punishment that a person receives in a law court
shoplifter	[ˈʃɒplɪftər]	someone who steals money from

		a store
spy	[spai]	someone whose job is to find out secret information about another country or organization
statement	[steɪtmənt]	something that you say or write that gives information in a formal way; <i>make a statement</i>
suspect	[sʌspɛkt]	someone who the police think may be guilty of a crime
terrorism	[tɛrərɪzəm]	the use of violence to force a government to do something
terrorist	[tɛrərɪst]	someone who uses violence to achieve their aims

EXAMPLES

The police are looking for the stolen car.

There wasn't enough proof to charge them.

The firm offered a \$10,000 reward for information about the killer.

He was given a four-year sentence.

Three suspects were arrested in connection with the assault.

theft	[θɛft]	the crime of stealing
thief	[θɪf]	someone who steals something

(PL)thieves	[θiːvz]	from another person
trial	[traɪəl]	a formal meeting in a court, at which people decide whether someone is guilty of a crime
vandal	[vændəl]	someone who deliberately damages property
victim	[vɪktəm]	someone who has been hurt or killed
will	[wɪl]	a legal document that says who will receive someone's money when they die
witness	[wɪtnɪs]	someone who appears in a court to say what they know about a crime or other event

VERBS

arrest	[əˈrɛst]	to take someone to a police station, because they may have broken the law
assault	[əˈsɔlt]	to attack a person physically
break the law		to do something illegal
burglarize	[bɜrgləraɪz]	to enter a building by force and

steal things (*In British English, use **burgle***)

burgle (*BRIT*)

see **burglarize**

charge [tʃɑːrdʒ]

to formally tell someone that they have done something wrong

commit [kəˈmɪt]

to do something illegal; *commit a crime; commit murder*

confess [kənˈfɛs]

to admit that you have done something wrong

EXAMPLES

He is on trial for murder.

The driver apologized to the victim's family.

Police arrested five young men in connection with the robbery.

Our house was burglarized last year.

Police charged Mr. Bell with murder.

He confessed to seventeen murders.

convict [kənˈvɪkt]

to find someone guilty of a crime in a court

escape [ɪsˈkeɪp]

to manage to get away from a place; *escape from prison*

fine	[f <u>ai</u> n]	to order someone to pay a sum of money because they have done something illegal
forge	[f <u>ɔːr</u> dʒ]	to make illegal copies of paper money, a document, or a painting in order to cheat people
hold something up		to point a gun at someone in a place such as a bank or a shop, in order to get their money; <i>hold up a bank</i>
kidnap	[k <u>ɪ</u> dnæp]	to take someone away by force and keep them as a prisoner, often until their friends or family pay a ransom (= a large amount of money)
mug	[m <u>ʌ</u> g]	to attack someone and steal their money
murder	[m <u>ɜː</u> dər]	to kill someone deliberately
prove	[pr <u>uː</u> v]	to show that something is true
rape	[r <u>eɪ</u> p]	to force someone to have sex when they do not want to
rob	[r <u>ɒ</u> b]	to steal money or property from someone

sentence	[sɛntəns]	to say in court what a person's punishment will be
solve	[sɒlv]	to find out who committed a crime; <i>solve a crime</i>
steal	[sti:l]	to take something from someone without their permission
suspect	[səspɛkt]	to believe that someone probably did something wrong
vandalize	[vændəlaɪz]	to damage something on purpose

EXAMPLES

He was convicted of manslaughter.

She was fined \$300.

She was sentenced to nine years in prison.

Someone stole my wallet!

Police suspect him of fraud.

witness	[wɪtnɪs]	to see something happen
----------------	----------	-------------------------

ADJECTIVES

criminal	[krɪmɪnəl]	connected with a crime; <i>criminal charges</i>
-----------------	------------	---

guilty	[gɪl̩ti]	having committed a crime or an offense
illegal	[ɪlɪgəl]	not allowed by law
innocent	[ɪnəsənt]	not guilty of a crime
legal	[liːgəl]	1 used for describing things that relate to the law; <i>the legal system</i> 2 allowed by law
violent	[vaɪələnt]	using physical force to hurt or kill other people

EXAMPLES

Anyone who witnessed the attack should call the police.

He was found guilty.

He was proved innocent.

Is this legal?

materials

NOUNS

acrylic	[ækriːlɪk]	a soft artificial material that feels like wool
aluminium (BRIT)		see aluminum
aluminum	[əˈlʊmɪnəm]	a light metal used for making things such as cooking equipment and cans for food and drink (<i>In British English, use aluminium</i>)
brass	[bræs]	a yellow-colored metal
brick	[brɪk]	a rectangular block used in the building of walls; <i>a brick wall</i>
bronze	[brɒnz]	a yellowish-brown metal that is a mixture of copper and tin
canvas	[kænvəs]	a strong, heavy material that is used for making tents and bags
cardboard	[kɑːrdbɔːrd]	thick, stiff paper that is used for making boxes; <i>a cardboard box</i>

cement	[sɪmɛnt]	a gray powder that is mixed with sand and water in order to make concrete
china	[tʃaɪnə]	a hard white substance that is used for making expensive cups and plates
clay	[kleɪ]	a type of earth that is soft when it is wet and hard when it is dry. Clay is used for making things such as pots and bricks; <i>a clay pot</i>
coal	[kəʊl]	a hard black substance that comes from under the ground and is burned to give heat
concrete	[kɒŋkri:t]	a hard substance made by mixing cement with sand and water. Concrete is used for building.

EXAMPLES

We ate from small bowls made of china.

He put some more coal on the fire.

copper	[kɒpər]	a soft reddish-brown metal
cotton	[kɒtən]	cloth or thread that is made from the soft fibers of a plant called a cotton plant
crystal	[krɪstəl]	1 a small, hard piece of a natural substance; <i>ice crystals</i> 2 a clear rock used in jewelry; <i>a crystal necklace</i> 3 high-quality glass; <i>a crystal vase</i>
denim	[dɛnɪm]	a thick cotton cloth, usually blue, that is used for making clothes; <i>a denim jacket</i>
elastic	[ɪlæstɪk]	a rubber material that stretches when you pull it, and then returns to its original size and shape
fabric	[fæbrɪk]	cloth that you use for making things like clothes and bags
fur	[fɜr]	the thick hair that grows on the bodies of many animals; <i>a fur coat</i>
glass	[glæs]	a hard, transparent substance that is used for making things

		such as windows and bottles
glue	[gl <u>u</u>]	a sticky substance that is used for joining things together
gold	[g <u>o</u> uld]	a valuable, yellow-colored metal that is used for making jewelry, ornaments, and coins
iron	[aɪ <u>r</u> ən]	a hard, dark gray metal; <i>an iron gate</i>
lace	[l <u>e</u> ɪs]	a delicate cloth with a design made of fine threads; <i>lace curtains</i>
lead	[l <u>ɛ</u> d]	a soft, gray, heavy metal; <i>a lead pipe</i>
leather	[l <u>ɛ</u> ðər]	animal skin that is used for making shoes, clothes, bags, and furniture
linen	[l <u>ɪ</u> nɪn]	a type of strong cloth

EXAMPLES

The documents were rolled up and held together with elastic.

We sell our tablecloths in plain or printed fabric.

This ring is made of solid gold.

He was wearing a white linen suit.

liquid	[lɪkwɪd]	a substance, for example water or oil, that flows and can be poured
marble	[mɑːrbəl]	a type of very hard rock that people use to make parts of buildings or statues (= models of people)
material	[mə'tɪəriəl]	1 any solid substance 2 cloth 3 the things that you need for a particular activity; <i>building materials</i>
metal	[mɛtəl]	a hard, usually shiny substance such as iron, steel, or gold
nylon	[naɪlɒn]	a strong, artificial substance that is used for making cloth and plastic
paper	[peɪpər]	a material that you write on or wrap things with; <i>a piece of paper</i>
plaster	[plæstər]	a substance that is used for making a smooth surface on the inside of walls and ceilings

plastic	[plæstɪk]	a light but strong material that is produced by a chemical process; <i>a plastic bag</i>
pottery	[pɒtəri]	pots, dishes, and other objects made from clay
rubber	[rʌbər]	a strong substance that is used for making tires, boots, and other products
sat<u>in</u>	[sætən]	a smooth, shiny cloth that is made of silk or other materials
s<u>il</u>k	[sɪlk]	a smooth, shiny cloth that is made from very thin threads from an insect called a silkworm
s<u>il</u>ver	[sɪlvər]	a valuable pale gray metal that is used for making jewelry
s<u>te</u>el	[sti:l]	a very strong metal that is made mainly from iron

EXAMPLES

The thick material of her skirt was too warm for summer.

stone	[stəʊn]	1 a hard solid substance that is found in
--------------	---------	--

		the ground and is often used for building; <i>a stone wall</i>
		2 a piece of beautiful and valuable rock that is used in making jewelry; <i>a precious stone</i>
straw	[strɔ]	the dried, yellow stems of crops; <i>a straw hat</i>
string	[striŋ]	very thin rope that is made of twisted threads
textile	[tɛkstail]	any type of cloth
thread	[θrɛd]	a long, very thin piece of cotton, nylon, or silk that you use for sewing
timber	[tɪmbər]	wood that is used for building and making things
tin	[tɪn]	a type of soft metal
velvet	[vɛlvɪt]	soft cloth that is thick on one side; <i>velvet curtains</i>
wax	[wæks]	a solid, slightly shiny substance that is used for making candles (= sticks that you burn for light) and polish for furniture

wire	[waɪə̃r]	a long, thin piece of metal; <i>a wire fence</i>
wood	[wʊd]	the hard material that trees are made of
wool	[wʊl]	a material made from the hair that grows on sheep and on some other animals

ADJECTIVES

hard	[hɑrd]	not easily bent, cut, or broken
man-made	[mæn meɪd]	created by people, rather than occurring naturally; <i>man-made fibers</i>
natural	[nætʃərəl, nætʃrəl]	existing in nature and not created by people
raw	[rɔ]	used for describing materials or substances that are in their natural state; <i>raw materials</i>

EXAMPLES

She works in the textile industry.

rough	[rʌf]	not smooth or even
smooth	[smuːð]	flat, with no rough parts, lumps or holes
soft	[sɔft]	1 pleasant to touch, and not rough or hard 2 changing shape easily when pressed
solid	[splɪd]	1 hard; not like liquid or gas 2 with no holes or space inside; <i>solid rock</i>
synthetic	[sɪnθetɪk]	made from chemicals or artificial substances rather than from natural ones
transparent	[trænsˈpærənt, -pær-]	used for describing an object or a substance that you can see through
wooden	[wʊdən]	made of wood; <i>a wooden chair</i>
woolen	[wʊlən]	made from wool; <i>a woolen sweater</i>

EXAMPLES

Shoes made from synthetic materials can be washed easily.

He fell on the hard wooden floor.

math

NOUNS

addition	[əˈdɪʃən]	the process of calculating the total of two or more numbers
algebra	[ældʒɪbrə]	a type of math in which letters and signs are used to represent numbers
angle	[æŋɡəl]	the space between two lines or surfaces that meet in one place; <i>a 30° angle</i>
area	[ɛəriə]	the amount of flat space that a surface covers, measured in square units
arithmetic	[əriθmɪtɪk]	the basic calculation of numbers, for example adding or multiplying
average	[ævərɪdʒ, ævrɪdʒ]	the result that you get when you add two or more amounts together and divide the total by the number of amounts you

added together; *The average of 1, 2, and 6 is 3.*

axis	[æksɪs]	one of the two lines on a graph
(PL) axes	[æksɪz]	on which you mark points to show measurements or amounts
bar chart <i>(BRIT)</i>		see bar graph
bar graph	[bɑr græf]	a chart that shows amounts as thick lines of different heights <i>(In British English, use bar chart)</i>
calculator	[kælkjələtər]	a small electronic machine that you use to calculate numbers
chart	[tʃɑrt]	a diagram or graph that shows information
circle	[sɜrkəl]	a round shape
circumference	[sɜrkʌmfrəns]	the distance around the edge of a circle
column	[kɒləm]	a section in a table that you read from top to bottom
compass	[kʌmpəs]	a piece of equipment that you use for drawing circles

EXAMPLES

She can count to 100 and do simple addition problems.

What's the area of this triangle?

We can label the axes: time is on the vertical axis and money is on the horizontal one.

cone	[k <u>o</u> ʊn]	a solid shape with one flat, round end and one pointed end
cube	[k <u>y</u> ʊb]	1 a solid object with six square surfaces 2 the number that you get if you multiply a number by itself twice
cylinder	[s <u>ɪ</u> lɪndər]	a shape with circular ends and long straight sides
decimal	[d <u>ɛ</u> sɪm <u>ə</u> l]	a part of a whole number that is written in the form of a period followed by one or more numbers, for example 0.25 or 10.6
decimal point	[d <u>ɛ</u> sɪm <u>ə</u> l p <u>ɔ</u> ɪnt]	the period in front of a decimal
degree	[d <u>ɪ</u> gr <u>i</u>]	1 a unit for measuring temperature that is often written as °; <i>180° Celsius</i>

		2 a unit for measuring angles that is often written as °; a 45° angle
diameter	[daɪəˈmɪtər]	the length of a straight line that can be drawn across a round object, passing through the middle of it
digit	[dɪdʒɪt]	a written symbol for any of the ten numbers from 0 to 9
division	[dɪvɪʒən]	the process of dividing one number by another number
figure	[fɪɡjər]	1 one of the symbols from 0 to 9 that you use to write numbers 2 an amount or a price expressed as a number
formula	[fɔːmyələ]	a group of letters, numbers, or other symbols that represents a
(PL) formulas,		scientific rule
formulae	[fɔːmyəli]	
fraction	[frækʃən]	a part of a whole number, such as 1/2 or 1/3

EXAMPLES

The cube of 2 is 8.

The waiter forgot to put a decimal point in their \$45.00 bill and they were charged \$4500.

They put the figures in the wrong column.

The mathematical formula describes the distances of the planets from the Sun.

geometry	[dʒiɒmɪtri]	a type of math relating to lines, angles, curves, and shapes
graph	[græf]	a picture that shows information about sets of numbers or measurements
half	[hæf]	one of two equal parts of a
(PL) halves	[hævz]	number, an amount, or an object
height	[haɪt]	the amount that something measures from the bottom to the top
hexagon	[hɛksəɡɒn]	a shape with six straight sides
length	[lɛŋθ]	the amount that something measures from one end to the other, along the longest side
math	[mæθ]	the study of numbers, quantities, or shapes (<i>In British English, use maths</i>)
mathematics	[mæθəmətɪks]	same as math

maths (*BRIT*)

see **math**

multiplication [mʌltɪplɪkeɪʃən] the process of calculating the total of one number multiplied by another

number [nʌmbər] a word such as “two,” “nine,” or “twelve” or a symbol such as 1, 3, or 47 that is used in counting

numeral [nʊmərəl] a written symbol that represents a number; *The Roman numeral for 7 is VII.*

oblong [ɒblɔŋ] a shape that has two long sides and two short sides

pentagon [pɛntəɡən] a shape with five straight sides

percent [pɜrsɛnt] used for talking about an amount as part of 100, often written as %

percentage [pɜrsɛntɪdʒ] an amount of something, considered as part of 100

EXAMPLES

The graph shows that prices went up about 20 percent last year.

More than half of all U.S. houses are heated with gas.

The table is about one yard in length.

Only ten percent of our customers live in this city.

A large percentage of the population speaks English.

perimeter	[pəˈrɪmɪtər]	the total distance around the edge of a flat shape
pie chart	[paɪ tʃɑrt]	a circle that is divided into sections to show something divided into different amounts
pyramid	[pɪrəˈmɪd]	a solid shape with a flat base and flat sides that form a point where they meet at the top
quarter	[kwɔrtər]	one of four equal parts of something
radius (_{PL}) radiuses , radii	[reɪdiəs] [reɪdiɑɪ]	the distance from the center of a circle to its outside edge
ratio	[reɪʃoʊ, -ʃiʊ]	a relationship between two things when it is expressed in numbers or amounts
rectangle	[rɛktæŋɡəl]	a shape with four straight sides and four 90° angles
right angle	[raɪt æŋɡəl]	an angle of 90°

row	[r <u>o</u>]	a section in a table that you read from one side to the other
ruler	[r <u>u</u> lər]	a long, flat object that you use for measuring things and for drawing straight lines
scale	[sk <u>e</u> ɪl]	a set of levels or numbers that you use to measure things
semicircle	[s <u>ɛ</u> mis <u>ɜ</u> rkəl, s <u>ɛ</u> maɪ-]	one half of a circle
shape	[ʃ <u>e</u> ɪp]	something such as a circle, a square, or a triangle
sphere	[s <u>f</u> iə]	an object that is completely round, like a ball

EXAMPLES

To work out the perimeter of a rectangle, you need to know its length and width.

A quarter of them are over 55 years old.

The adult to child ratio is one to six.

The earthquake measured 5.5 on the Richter scale.

square	[skw <u>ɛ</u> ər]	1 a shape with four straight sides that are all the same length
---------------	-------------------	--

		2 the number that you get if you multiply a number by itself
square root	[skwɛər rʊt]	a number that you multiply by itself to produce another number; <i>The square root of 36 is 6.</i>
subtraction	[səbtrækʃən]	the process of taking one number away from another number
sum	[sʌm]	the number that you get when you add two or more numbers together; <i>Fourteen is the sum of six and eight.</i>
table	[teɪbəl]	a set of numbers that you arrange in neat rows and columns
triangle	[traɪæŋɡəl]	a shape with three straight sides
unit	[juːnɪt]	a fixed measurement such as a liter or an inch
volume	[vɒljum]	the amount of space that an object contains
width	[wɪdθ, wɪtθ]	the amount that something measures from one side to the

other

VERBS

add	[æd]	to calculate the total of various numbers or amounts
calculate	[kælkjələit]	to find out an amount by using numbers
count	[kaunt]	1 to say all the numbers in order up to a particular amount; <i>count to 20</i> 2 to see how many there are in a group; <i>count the money</i>
divide	[divaɪd]	to find out how many times one number can fit into another bigger number

EXAMPLES

The cube of 2 is 4.

What is the volume of a cube with sides 3cm long?

Add all the numbers together, and divide by three.

Have you calculated the cost of your trip?

Measure the floor area and divide it by six.

equal	[iˈkwəl]	to be the same as a particular
--------------	----------	--------------------------------

number or amount; *Nine minus two equals seven.*

multiply [mʌltɪplaɪ] to add a number to itself a certain number of times; *If you multiply 3 by 4, you get 12.*

subtract [səbtrækt] to take one number away from another number; *If you subtract 3 from 5, you get 2.*

take something away same as **subtract**

work something out same as **calculate**

ADJECTIVES

circular [sɜrkyələr] shaped like a circle

diagonal [daɪæɡənəl, -æɡnəl] going from one corner of a square across to the opposite corner

even [iːvən] used for describing numbers that can be divided exactly by two, for example 4, 8, and 24

mathematical [mæθəmætɪkəl] involving numbers and

		calculating; <i>a mathematical formula</i>
negative	[nɛgətɪv]	less than zero; <i>a negative number</i>
odd	[ɒd]	used for describing numbers such as 3 and 17, that cannot be divided exactly by two
parallel	[pærələl]	used for describing two lines that are the same distance apart along their whole length; <i>parallel lines</i>
positive	[pɒzɪtɪv]	higher than zero; <i>a positive number</i>
rectangular	[rɛktæŋgyələr]	shaped like a rectangle
square	[skwɛər]	1 used for describing a shape that has four straight sides that are all the same length; <i>a square table</i> 2 used for talking about the area of something; <i>30 square feet</i>
triangular	[traɪæŋgyələr]	shaped like a triangle

EXAMPLES

Add up the bills for each month. Take this away from the income.

It took me some time to work out the answer to the question.

The screen showed a pattern of diagonal lines.

PREPOSITIONS

minus	[maɪnəs]	used when you are taking one number away from another number; <i>Ten minus two is eight.</i>
plus	[plʌs]	used for showing that one number is being added to another; <i>Three plus four equals seven.</i>
times	[taɪmz]	used when you are multiplying one number by another; <i>Five times two is ten.</i>

money

NOUNS

allowance	[ə <u>l</u> auəns]	money that is given regularly to someone (<i>In British English, use pocket money</i>)
ATM	[eɪ ti ɛm]	a machine, usually outside a bank, from which you can get money using a special plastic card (<i>In British English, use cash machine</i>)
balance	[bæ <u>l</u> əns]	the amount of money you have in your bank account; <i>check your balance</i>
bank	[bæ <u>n</u> k]	a place where people can keep their money
bank account	[bæ <u>n</u> k əkaʊnt]	an arrangement with a bank where they look after your money for you; <i>open/close a bank account</i>
bill	[bɪ <u>l</u>]	a document that shows how

		much money you must pay for something; <i>pay the bill</i>
billfold	[bɪlfoʊld]	a small case that you can keep money and cards in (<i>In British English, use wallet</i>)
breadwinner	[brɛdwinər]	the person in a family who earns the money that the family needs
budget	[bʌdʒɪt]	the amount of money that you have available to spend; <i>a low-budget film</i>
bureau de change (BRIT)		see currency exchange
cash	[kæʃ]	money in the form of bills and coins; <i>two thousand dollars in cash</i>
cashier	[kæʃɪər]	a person whose job is to take your money in a store or a bank
cash machine (mainly BRIT)		see ATM
change	[tʃeɪndʒ]	1 the money that you get back when you pay with more money than something costs

2 coins; *change for the parking meter*

change purse [tʃeɪndʒ pɜːrs] a very small bag used for carrying money, especially by women (*In British English, use **purse***)

EXAMPLES

They couldn't afford to pay their bills.

I've always paid the bills and been the breadwinner.

charge [tʃɑːdʒ] an amount of money that you have to pay for a service; *a small charge*

checking account [tʃɛkɪŋ əkaʊnt] a bank account that you can take money out of at any time (*In British English, use **current account***)

check [tʃɛk] a printed piece of paper from a bank that you write an amount of money on and use to pay for things; *pay by check (In British English, use **cheque**)*

checkbook	[tʃɛkbʊk]	a book containing checks
cheque (BRIT)		see check
coin	[kɔɪn]	a small round piece of metal money
cost	[kɒst]	the amount of money you need in order to buy, do, or make something; <i>the high cost of housing</i>
credit	[krɛdɪt]	an arrangement that allows someone to buy something and pay for it later; <i>They bought it on credit.</i>
credit card	[krɛdɪt kɑrd]	a plastic card that you use to buy goods on credit; <i>pay by credit card</i>
currency	[kʊrənʃi]	the money that is used in a particular country; <i>pay in a different currency</i>
currency exchange	[kʊrənʃi ɪksʃeɪndʒ]	an office where you can buy and sell different currencies (<i>In British English, use bureau de change</i>)
current		see checking account

account (*BRIT*)

debit card [dɛbɪt kɑːd] a bank card that you can use to pay for things; *pay by debit card*

debt [dɛt] an amount of money that you owe someone; *get into debt*

EXAMPLES

He gave me a check for \$1500.

He counted out the coins into her hand.

The cost of a loaf of bread has gone up.

There will be an increase in the cost of posting a letter.

He is trying to pay off his debts.

deposit [dɪpɒzɪt] **1** a sum of money that is part of the full price of something, and that you pay when you agree to buy it; *a 10% deposit*

2 an amount of money that you put into a bank account; *make a deposit*

direct debit (*BRIT*) *see* **direct deposit**

direct deposit [dɪrɛkt dɪpɒzɪt, daɪ-] an arrangement that you make with a company, allowing them

		to take money that you owe them from or put money that they owe you into your bank account every month (<i>In British English, use direct deposit</i>)
economy	[ɪkɒnəmi]	the system for organizing the money and industry of the world, a country, or local government
expenses	[ɪkspɛnsɪz]	money that you spend on things
income	[ɪnkʌm]	the money that a person earns or receives
inheritance	[ɪnhɛrɪtəns]	money or property that you receive from someone who has died
insurance	[ɪnʃʊərəns]	an agreement that you make with a company in which you pay money to them regularly, and they pay you if something bad happens to you or your property; <i>travel insurance</i>
interest	[ɪntrɪst, -tərɪst]	the extra money that you pay if you have borrowed money, or

		the extra money that you receive if you have money in some types of bank accounts
loan	[l <u>oʊ</u> n]	an amount of money that you borrow
money	[m <u>ʌ</u> ni]	the coins or bills that you use to buy things
mortgage	[m <u>ɔːr</u> ɡɪdʒ]	a loan of money that you get from a bank in order to buy a house

EXAMPLES

The Indian economy is changing fast.

Her hotel expenses were paid by the company.

She used her inheritance to buy a house.

How much interest do you have to pay on the loan?

Do you earn much interest on that account?

I had to sell my home because I couldn't afford the mortgage payments.

payment	[p <u>eɪ</u> mənt]	<p>1 an amount of money that is paid to someone; <i>weekly payments</i></p> <p>2 the act of paying money or of being paid; <i>immediate payment</i></p>
----------------	--------------------	---

pension	[pɛnʃən]	money that you regularly receive from a business or the government after you stop working because of your age
PIN	[pɪn]	short for “Personal Identification Number:” a secret number that you can use, for example, with a bank card to get money from a cash machine; <i>enter in your PIN</i>
pocket money	[pɒkɪt mʌni]	1 a small amount of money 2 (BRIT) see allowance
poverty	[pɒvərti]	the state of being very poor; <i>living in poverty</i>
price	[praɪs]	the amount of money that you have to pay in order to buy something
profit	[prɒfɪt]	the amount of money that you gain when you sell something for more than you paid for it
purse	[pɜːrs]	1 a small bag used for carrying money and other items, especially by women 2 (BRIT) see change purse

rent	[rɛnt]	money that you pay to someone so that you can use something that belongs to them; <i>pay the rent</i>
salary	[sæləri]	the money that you earn from your employer
sales tax	[seɪlz tæks]	a tax that is added to the price of goods or services
savings	[seɪvɪŋz]	all the money that you have saved, especially in a bank
savings account	[seɪvɪŋz əkaʊnt]	a bank account that gives you interest on your money

EXAMPLES

To use the service you'll need a PIN number.

We have seen huge changes in the price of gas.

They expect house prices to rise.

The lawyer was paid a huge salary.

savings and loan	[seɪvɪŋz ənd laʊn]	a business that lends people money to buy houses and that provides savings accounts; <i>savings and loan association</i>
-------------------------	--------------------	--

buy	[baɪ]	to get something by paying money for it
charge	[tʃɑːdʒ]	to ask someone to pay money for something
cost	[kɒst]	to have as a price; <i>cost a lot</i>
deposit	[dɪpɒzɪt]	to put an amount of money into a bank account
donate	[dəʊneɪt]	to give something to an organization

EXAMPLES

I bought shares in my brother's new company.

His wages have gone up.

I lost my wallet.

He could not afford to buy a house.

Lizzie bought herself a bike.

The driver charged us only \$2 each.

How much do you charge for printing photos?

He has no children to inherit his house.

earn	[ɜːn]	to receive money for work that you do
inherit	[ɪnhɪrɪt]	to receive money or property from someone who has died

invest	[ɪnvɛst]	to put money into a business or a bank, in order to try to make a profit from it
lend	[lɛnd]	to give someone money that they must give back after a certain amount of time
make money		to get money for doing something
owe	[oʊ]	to have to pay money to someone
pay	[peɪ]	<p>1 to give someone an amount of money for something that you are buying; <i>pay for the food</i></p> <p>2 to give someone an amount of money for something such as a bill or a debt; <i>pay the bill</i></p> <p>3 to give someone money for the work that they do; <i>We can pay you every week.</i></p> <p>4 to give someone the money that you owe them; <i>I haven't paid him back yet.</i></p>

pay something in		to put money into a bank account
pay up		to give someone the money that you owe them, even though you would prefer not to
save	[seɪv]	to gradually collect money by spending less than you get
sign	[saɪn]	to write your name on a document; <i>sign a check</i>
spend	[spɛnd]	to pay money for things that you want or need; <i>spend money</i>
withdraw	[wiðdrɔ̃, wiθ-]	to take money out of a bank account

EXAMPLES

He made a lot of money from his first book.

The company owes money to more than 60 banks.

Blake owed him \$50.

Tim and Barbara are saving for a house.

I was saving money to go to college.

ADJECTIVES

bankrupt	[bæŋkrʌpt]	without enough money to pay your debts
cheap	[tʃi:p]	1 costing little money, or less than you expected 2 not willing to spend much money
expensive	[ɪkspɛnsɪv]	costing a lot of money
generous	[dʒɛnərəs]	giving you more than you expect of something; <i>a generous gift</i>
poor	[puə]	having very little money and few possessions
rich	[rɪtʃ]	having a lot of money or valuable possessions
thrifty	[θrɪfti]	saving money, not buying unnecessary things, and not wasting things
valuable	[vælyuəbəl]	worth a lot of money
wealthy	[welθi]	having a large amount of money, property, or valuable possessions

IDIOMS

be rolling in it	[INFORMAL] to have a lot of money
in the red	[INFORMAL] owing money to a bank
make ends meet	to manage to live on your income
money doesn't grow on trees	used for saying that money is not freely available
save something for a rainy day	to keep money to use if an unexpected need arises
tighten your belt	to spend less money than you usually do

EXAMPLES

I want to rent a cheap room near the university.

She was always dressed in the most expensive silk and cashmere.

My mother taught me to be thrifty.

Do not leave any valuable items in your hotel room.

The company is \$5 million in the red.

music

NOUN

music	[my <u>u</u> zɪk]	1 the pleasant sound that you make when you sing or play instruments; <i>listen to music</i> 2 the symbols that you write on paper to tell people what to sing or play; <i>read music</i>
--------------	-------------------	--

TYPES OF MUSIC

classical music	[klæsɪkəl my <u>u</u> zɪk]	a traditional type of music, written in a standard form
country music	[kʌntri my <u>u</u> zɪk]	a type of music in the style of the traditional music of the southern and western U.S.
folk music	[f <u>o</u> lk myuzɪk]	music that is traditional or typical of a particular group of people or country
jazz	[dʒæz]	a style of music that has strong rhythms. It was invented by African-

American musicians in the early part of the twentieth century.

pop music	[pɒp myʊzɪk]	modern popular music, usually with a strong rhythm and simple tunes
rap	[ræp]	a type of modern music in which the words are spoken
rock and roll	[rɒk ənd roʊl]	a type of pop music developed in the 1950s which has a strong beat for dancing

MUSICAL INSTRUMENTS

cello	[tʃɛləʊ]	a musical instrument that is like a large violin. You sit behind it and rest it on the floor.
clarinet	[klærɪnɛt]	a musical instrument that you blow. It is a long black wooden tube with keys on it that you press and a single reed (= small flat part that moves and makes a sound when you blow).

EXAMPLES

This is a collection of traditional folk music from nearly 30 countries.

The club plays live jazz on Sundays.

Elvis Presley was known as the King of Rock and Roll.

drum	[drʌm]	a simple musical instrument that you hit with sticks or with your hands
flute	[flʊt]	a musical instrument that you play by blowing. You hold it sideways to your mouth.
guitar	[ɡɪtɑː]	a musical instrument that has six strings and a long neck
harp	[hɑːp]	a large musical instrument that has strings stretched from the top to the bottom of a frame. You play the harp with your fingers.
horn	[hɔːn]	a musical instrument with a long metal tube that you play by blowing into it
keyboard	[kɪbɔːd]	1 the set of black and white keys that you press when you play a piano

		2 an electronic musical instrument that has a keyboard
musical instrument	[myʊzɪkəl ɪnstrəmənt]	an object such as a piano, guitar, or violin that you use for playing music
oboe	[oʊboʊ]	a musical instrument that you blow. It is a long black wooden tube with keys on it that you press and a double reed (= small flat part that moves and makes a sound when you blow).
organ	[ɔrgən]	a large musical instrument that is like a piano
piano	[piænəʊ, pyænəʊ]	a large musical instrument that you play by pressing black and white bars (= keys)
recorder	[rɪkɔrdər]	a wooden or plastic musical instrument in the shape of a pipe. You play it by blowing down one end and covering holes with your fingers.
saxophone	[sæksəfoʊn]	a musical instrument made of metal that you play by blowing

into it

sitar [sɪtɑːr] an Indian musical instrument with two layers of strings, a long neck, and a round body

EXAMPLES

Sam is a great guitar player.

tambourine [tæmbəˈrɪn] a round musical instrument that has small bells around its edge. You shake it or hit it with your hand.

trumpet [trʌmpɪt] a metal musical instrument that you blow

violin [vaɪəlɪn] a musical instrument made of wood with four strings. You hold it under your chin, and play it by moving a long stick (= a bow) across the strings

xylophone [zaɪləˈfoʊn] a musical instrument with a row of wooden bars of different lengths that you play with special hammers

PEOPLE

band	[bænd]	a group of people who play music together; <i>play in a band</i>
choir	[kwaɪər]	a group of people who sing together
composer	[kəmˈpəʊzər]	a person who writes music
conductor	[kənˈdʌktər]	a person who stands in front of a group of musicians and directs their performance
drummer	[drʌmər]	a person who plays a drum or a drum kit
guitarist	[ɡɪtərɪst]	a person who plays the guitar
musician	[myʊzɪˈfən]	a person who plays a musical instrument as their job or hobby
orchestra	[ɔrkɪstrə]	a large group of musicians who play different instruments together
pianist	[piænɪst, pɪənɪst]	a person who plays the piano
singer	[sɪŋər]	a person who sings, especially as a job

PIECES AND PARTS OF MUSIC

chord	[kɔːrd]	a number of musical notes played or sung at the same time; <i>a chord of G major</i>
chorus	[kɔːrəs]	a part of a song that you repeat several times
duet	[duːt]	a piece of music performed by two people; <i>a duet for two guitarists</i>

EXAMPLES

He sang in his church choir for ten years.

harmony	[hɑːməni]	the pleasant combination of different notes of music played at the same time; <i>play in harmony</i>
key	[ki]	a particular scale of musical notes; <i>the key of C</i>
lyrics	[lɪrɪks]	the words of a song
melody	[mɛlədi]	a group of musical notes that make a tune

note	[n <u>o</u> ʊt]	1 one particular musical sound; <i>a wrong note</i> 2 a symbol that represents this sound
octave	[ɒk <u>t</u> ɪv]	a series of eight notes in music, or the difference between the first and last notes in the series
piece of music	[pɪs əv my <u>u</u> zɪk]	a complete musical work; <i>an orchestral piece</i>
rhythm	[rɪ <u>ð</u> əm]	a regular pattern of sounds or movements
scale	[skeɪ <u>l</u>]	a set of musical notes that are played in a fixed order
solo	[s <u>o</u> ʊləʊ]	a piece of music performed by one person
song	[sɔŋ]	words and music sung together
verse	[vɜrs]	one of the groups of lines in a poem or song

RECORDING, PERFORMING, AND LISTENING TO MUSIC

album	[æ <u>l</u> bəm]	a collection of songs on a CD
CD	[si di]	short for “compact disc:” a disc for storing music

concert	[kɒnsərt]	a performance of music
iPod™	[aɪpɒd]	a small piece of electronic equipment that stores music, photos, and movies
karaoke	[kæriouki]	a form of entertainment in which a machine plays songs, and you sing the words

EXAMPLES

She has a deep voice so she can't sing high notes.

He raised his sticks and beat out the rhythm of the song.

The band released their new album on July 1.

The weekend began with an outdoor rock concert.

MP3 player	[ɛm pi θri pleɪər]	a small piece of electronic equipment that stores and plays music
microphone	[maɪkrəfoʊn]	a piece of electronic equipment that you use to make sounds louder or to record them onto a machine
record	[rɛkərd]	a round, flat piece of black plastic on which sound,

especially music, is stored. A record can be played on a record player.

VERBS

compose	[kəmˈpəʊz]	to write a piece of music
conduct	[kənˈdʌkt]	to stand in front of musicians and direct their performance
perform	[pəˈfɔːm]	to play a piece of music in front of an audience
play	[pleɪ]	1 to produce music from a musical instrument 2 to put a CD into a machine and listen to it
practice	[præktɪs]	to do something regularly in order to do it better (<i>In British English, use practise</i>)
practise (BRIT)		see practice
record	[rɪkɔːrd]	to store something such as a speech or a performance in a computer file or on a disk so that it can be heard or seen again later

sing	[sɪŋ]	to make music with your voice
tune	[tʏn]	to adjust a musical instrument so that it produces the right notes

EXAMPLES

the Orchestra of Welsh National Opera conducted by Carlo Rizzi

They will be performing works by Bach and Scarlatti.

Nina was playing the piano.

She played her CDs too loudly.

My brother and I used to sing this song.

ADJECTIVES

acoustic	[əkuːstɪk]	an acoustic musical instrument is one which is not electric; <i>an acoustic guitar</i>
classical	[klæsɪkəl]	traditional in form, style, or content; <i>classical music</i>
flat	[flæt]	used for describing a note that is slightly lower than another note
major	[meɪdʒər]	used for talking about a scale with half steps in sound between the third and fourth and the

seventh and eighth notes; *a scale of G major*

minor [maɪnər] used in music for talking about a scale in which the third note is one half step lower than the related major scale

musical [myʊzɪkəl] 1 relating to playing or studying music; *musical training*
2 having a natural ability and interest in music; *musical children*

sharp [ʃɑrp] used for describing a note that is slightly higher than another note

ADVERBS

in tune [ɪn tu:n] singing or playing the correct musical notes; *sing in tune*

loudly [laʊdli] easily heard because the level of sound is very high; *playing loudly*

out of tune [aʊt əv ʌv tu:n] not singing or playing the correct musical notes; *sing out of*

softly

[sɔftli]

tune

quietly or gently; *singing softly*

the office

NOUNS

binder	[baɪndər]	a cover for holding loose sheets of paper together
briefcase	[brɪfkeɪs]	a small suitcase for carrying business papers in; <i>a leather briefcase</i>
bulletin board	[bʊlɪtɪn bɔːrd]	a board on a wall for notices giving information (<i>In British English, use noticeboard</i>)
business card	[bɪznɪs kɑːrd]	a small card printed with your name, job, business address, and other contact information; <i>give someone your business card</i>
calculator	[kælkjʊleɪtər]	a small electronic machine that you use to calculate numbers
conference room	[kɒnfərəns rum, -frəns]	a room in an office building where people have meetings
department	[dɪpɑːtmənt]	one of the sections in an organization

desk	[dɛsk]	a table that you sit at to write or work
fax machine	[fæks məʃɪn]	a special machine that you use to send and receive documents electronically
file	[faɪl]	1 a box or a type of envelope that you keep papers in 2 a collection of information that you keep on your computer; <i>open a file; a computer file</i>
filing cabinet	[faɪlɪŋ kæbɪnɪt]	a tall piece of office furniture with deep drawers for documents
folder	[foʊldər]	1 a folded piece of cardboard or plastic that you keep papers in; <i>a work folder</i> 2 a group of files that are stored together on a computer
highlighter	[haɪlaɪtər]	a brightly colored pen that is used for marking important parts of a document

EXAMPLES

Her telephone number was pinned to the bulletin board.

She works in the accounting department.

The file contained letters and reports.

ink cartridge [ɪŋk kɑːtrɪdʒ] a small container filled with ink that you put into a printer

notepad [nəʊtpæd] 1 a pad of paper for writing notes on
2 a pocket-sized personal computer

noticeboard *see* **bulletin board**
(BRIT)

office [ɒfɪs] a place where people work sitting at a desk; *work in an office*

overhead projector [oʊvərhed prədʒektər] a piece of equipment that you use to make an image on a plastic sheet appear large on a screen

scissors [sɪzəz] a small tool for cutting, with two sharp parts that are joined together

paperclip [peɪpərklɪp] a small metal clip used for holding sheets of paper together

pen	[pɛn]	a long thin object that you use for writing with ink (= colored liquid)
pencil	[pɛnsəl]	a thin piece of wood with a black or colored substance through the middle that you use to write or draw with
photocopier	[fəʊtəkɒpiər]	a machine that copies documents by photographing them
photocopy	[fəʊtəkɒpi]	a copy of a document that you make using a photocopier; <i>make a photocopy</i>
printer	[prɪntər]	a machine for printing copies of computer documents on paper
reception	[rɪsɛpʃən]	the desk in an office building that you go to when you first arrive
receptionist	[rɪsɛpʃənɪst]	a person who deals with people on the phone or in person at a reception desk
safe	[seɪf]	a strong metal box with a lock, where you keep money or other

valuable things

Scotch tape™ [skɒtʃ teɪp] clear plastic sticky tape that is used for sticking things together; *a roll of Scotch tape (In British English, use sellotape)*

sellotape
(BRIT) see **Scotch tape™**

stapler [steɪplər] a small piece of equipment that is used for attaching sheets of paper together with staples

staples [steɪpəlz] pieces of thin wire that attach sheets of paper together

toner [təʊnər] a black or colored powder used as ink in a printer or a photocopier

vending machine [vɛndɪŋ məʃɪn] a machine that you can buy small articles from, such as food, drinks, or cigarettes

VERBS

photocopy [fəʊtəkɒpi] to make a copy of a document using a photocopier; *photocopy a document*

scan

[skæ̃n]

to make an electronic copy of a picture or a document using a special piece of equipment (called a scanner)

type

[taɪp]

to write something using a machine like a computer

personal items

NOUNS

billfold	[bɪlfoʊld]	a small case in which you keep money and cards (<i>In British English, use wallet</i>)
bracelet	[breɪslɪt]	a piece of jewelry that you wear around your wrist; <i>a silver bracelet</i>
brush	[brʌʃ]	an object with a lot of hairs attached to it that you use for making your hair tidy
change purse	[tʃeɪndʒ pɜrs]	a very small bag used for carrying money, especially by women (<i>In British English, use purse</i>)
comb	[kəʊm]	a thin piece of plastic or metal with narrow, pointed parts (called teeth). You use a comb to make your hair tidy.
cotton ball	[kɒtən bɔl]	soft, fluffy cotton, often used for

		applying creams to your skin (<i>In British English, use cotton wool</i>)
cotton wool (<i>BRIT</i>)		see cotton ball
dental floss	[dɛntəl flɒs]	a type of thread that is used to clean between your teeth
deodorant	[di <u>oʊ</u> dərənt]	a substance that you can put on your skin to hide or prevent bad smells
diamond	[d <u>aɪ</u> mənd, d <u>aɪ</u> ə-]	a hard, clear stone that is very expensive, and is used for making jewelry; <i>diamond earrings</i>
earring	[<u>ɪ</u> ərɪŋ]	a piece of jewelry that you wear on your ear
face cream	[f <u>eɪ</u> s krim]	a thick substance that you can rub into your face to keep it soft
face powder	[f <u>eɪ</u> s paʊdər]	a very fine soft powder that you can put on your face to make it look smoother
flannel (<i>BRIT</i>)		see washcloth
gel	[dʒ <u>ɛ</u> l]	a thick substance like jelly, used

		for keeping your hair in a particular style or for washing your body; <i>shower gel</i>
hairdryer	[hɛədrɪər]	a machine that you use to dry your hair
hairspray	[hɛəsprɛɪ]	a sticky substance that you spray out of a can onto your hair in order to hold it in place
handbag (BRIT)		see purse
handkerchief	[hæŋkətʃɪf]	a small square piece of cloth that you use for blowing your nose
jewelry	[dʒuəlri]	decorations that you wear on your body, such as a ring that you wear on your finger; a <i>jewelry box</i> (In British English, use jewellery)
jewellery (BRIT)		see jewelry
key ring	[ki riŋ]	a metal ring that you use to keep your keys together
lipstick	[lɪpstɪk]	a colored substance that women

		sometimes put on their lips
makeup	[meɪkʌp]	the creams and powders that you can put on your face to make yourself look more attractive; <i>put on makeup; take off makeup</i>
mirror	[mɪrər]	a flat piece of special glass that you can see yourself in
mouthwash	[maʊθwɒʃ]	a liquid that you put in your mouth to clean it and make your breath smell pleasant
nail file	[neɪl faɪl]	a small rough strip that you rub across the ends of your nails to shorten them or shape them
nail varnish	[neɪl vɑːnɪʃ]	a thick liquid that you can paint on your nails
necklace	[nɛklɪs]	a piece of jewelry that you wear around your neck
perfume	[pɜːrfyʊm, pɜːfyʊm]	a liquid with a pleasant smell that you put on your skin
purse	[pɜːrs]	1 a small bag that a woman uses for carrying things such as money and keys (<i>In British</i>

English, use **handbag**)

2 (BRIT) see **change purse**

EXAMPLES

Eva was wearing red lipstick.

Anna doesn't usually wear much makeup.

Dan looked at himself in the mirror.

The hall smelled of her mother's perfume.

razor	[reɪzər]	a tool that people use for shaving
ring	[rɪŋ]	a small circle of metal that you wear on your finger; <i>a wedding ring</i>
shampoo	[ʃæmpu]	liquid soap that you use for washing your hair
soap	[soʊp]	a substance that you use with water for washing yourself; <i>a bar of soap</i>
sponge	[spʌndʒ]	a piece of a very light soft material with a lot of small holes in it, that you use for washing yourself

suncream (BRIT)		see sunscreen
sunscreen	[sʌnskrɪn]	a cream that you can put on your skin to protect it from the sun (<i>In British English, use suncream</i>)
tissue	[tɪʃu]	a piece of thin, soft paper that you use to wipe your nose; <i>a packet of tissues</i>
toilet paper	[tɔɪlɪt peɪpə]	paper that you use to clean yourself after using the toilet
toiletries	[tɔɪlətrɪz]	the things that you use when you are washing or taking care of your body, such as soap and toothpaste
toothbrush	[tuθbrʌʃ]	a small brush that you use for cleaning your teeth
toothpaste	[tuθpeɪst]	a thick substance that you put on a toothbrush for cleaning your teeth
towel	[taʊəl]	a piece of thick soft cloth that you use to dry yourself; <i>a bath towel</i>

wallet (BRIT)

see **billfold**

washcloth [wɒʃkloʊθ]

a small cloth that you use for washing yourself (*In British English, use flannel*)

watch [wɒtʃ]

a small clock that you wear on your wrist

VERBS

brush [brʌʃ]

to tidy something using a brush;
brush your hair

carry [kæri]

1 to hold something in your hand and take it with you; *carry a handbag*

2 to always have something with you; *carry a passport*

comb [kɒm]

to use a comb to make your hair tidy; *comb your hair*

put something
on

to place clothing or makeup on your body in order to wear it

take
something off

to remove clothing or makeup

wear [wɛər]

to have something such as clothes, shoes, or jewelry on

your body

EXAMPLES

She put on her makeup.

Rosalinda was wearing gold earrings.

plants, trees, and gardens

NOUNS

ash	[æʃ]	a tree that has smooth gray bark and loses its leaves in the winter
bark	[bɑrk]	the rough surface of a tree
beech	[bi:tʃ]	a tree with a smooth gray trunk
birch	[bɜrtʃ]	a tall tree with thin branches
bird feeder	[bɜrd fidər]	a container that you fill with food for birds
blossom	[blɒsəm]	the flowers that appear on a fruit tree; <i>cherry blossom</i>
border	[bɔrdər]	a long area of ground along the edge of a garden that is planted with flowers; <i>border plants</i>
branch	[bræntʃ]	one of the parts of a tree that have leaves, flowers, and fruit
bud	[bʌd]	a new growth on a tree or plant that develops into a leaf or flower

bush	[bʊʃ]	a plant with leaves and branches that is smaller than a tree; <i>a rose bush</i>
buttercup	[bʌtərkuːp]	a small wild plant with bright yellow flowers
compost	[kɒmpoʊst]	a mixture of dead plants and vegetables that is used to improve soil
daffodil	[dæfədɪl]	a yellow flower with a long stem that appears in spring
daisy	[deɪzi]	a small wildflower with a yellow center and white petals
dandelion	[dændɪlɪən]	a wild plant with yellow flowers that turn into balls of soft white seeds
elm	[ɛlm]	a tree with broad leaves that it loses in the fall
fence	[fɛns]	a wooden or metal wall around a piece of land
fern	[fɜːn]	a plant that has long stems with leaves that look like feathers

EXAMPLES

We picked apples from the upper branches of a tree.
Small pink buds were beginning to form on the bushes.

fertilizer	[fɜrtəlaɪzər]	a substance that you put on soil to make plants grow well
fir tree	[fɜr tri]	a tall evergreen tree that has thin needle-like leaves
flower	[flaʊər]	the brightly colored part of a plant; <i>a bunch of flowers; a flower bed; a flower pot</i>
forest	[fɔrɪst]	a large area where trees grow close together; <i>a forest fire</i>
forget-me-not	[fərgɛt mi nɒt]	a small plant with very small blue flowers
garden	[gɑrdən]	1 the part of the land by your house where you grow flowers and vegetables 2 places with plants, trees, and grass, that people can visit
garden bench	[gɑrdən bɛntʃ]	a long seat of wood or metal that two or more people can sit on in a garden
garden center	[gɑrdən sɛntər]	a store, usually with an outdoor

		area, where you can buy plants and tools for your garden
gardener	[gɑːdnər]	a person who works in a garden
gardening	[gɑːdnɪŋ]	the activity of working in a garden
grass	[græs]	a plant with thin, green leaves that cover the surface of the ground; <i>cut the grass</i>
greenhouse	[grɪnhaʊs]	a glass building where you grow plants to protect them from bad weather
ground	[graʊnd]	the soil on the Earth's surface in which you can grow plants
grounds	[graʊndz]	the garden or area of land around a large or important building
hedge	[hedʒ]	a row of small trees growing close together around a garden or a field

EXAMPLES

She has a beautiful garden.

The gardens are open from 10:30 a.m. until 5:00 p.m.

Mrs. Daly employs a gardener.
My favorite hobby is gardening.
We walked around the palace grounds.

hoe	[h <u>oʊ</u>]	a tool with a long handle and a small square blade that you use to break up the surface of the soil
holly	[h <u>ɒ</u> li]	a plant that has hard, shiny leaves with sharp points, and red berries in the winter
hose	[h <u>oʊ</u> z]	a long rubber or plastic pipe that you use to put water on plants; <i>a garden hose</i>
ivy	[<u>aɪ</u> vi]	a dark-green plant that grows up walls or along the ground
jasmine	[dʒ <u>æ</u> zmɪn]	a climbing plant which has small white or yellow flowers with a pleasant smell
lawn	[l <u>ɔː</u> n]	an area of short grass around a house or other building
lawnmower	[l <u>ɔː</u> nm <u>oʊ</u> ər]	a machine for cutting grass
leaf <small>(PL)</small> leaves	[l <u>iː</u> f] [l <u>iː</u> vz]	the parts of a tree or plant that

		are flat, thin, and usually green; <i>an oak leaf</i>
lily	[ˈlɪli]	a plant with large sweet-smelling flowers
oak	[oʊk]	a type of large tree
orchard	[ˈɔrtʃərd]	an area of land where fruit trees grow; <i>a cherry orchard</i>
orchid	[ˈɔrkɪd]	a plant with brightly colored, unusually shaped flowers
palm tree	[pɑm tri]	a straight tree with a lot of long leaves at the top, which grows in tropical countries
path	[pæθ]	a long, narrow piece of ground that people walk along
patio	[pætiou]	a flat area next to a house, where people can sit and relax or eat; <i>patio furniture</i>
petal	[pɛtəl]	the thin colored parts of a plant that form the flower; <i>rose petals</i>
pine	[paɪn]	a tall tree with long, thin leaves that it keeps all year

EXAMPLES

We had lunch on the lawn.

We followed the path through the grounds.

plant	[pl <u>æ</u> nt]	a living thing that grows in the earth and has a stem, leaves, and roots
poppy	[p <u>ɒ</u> pi]	a plant with large, delicate, red flowers
primrose	[pr <u>ɪ</u> mrouz]	a wild plant with pale yellow flowers
rainforest	[re <u>ɪ</u> n <u>f</u> ɔ:rist]	a thick forest of tall trees that grows in tropical areas where there is a lot of rain
rake	[re <u>ɪ</u> k]	a tool with a long handle, used for collecting loose grass or leaves
root	[r <u>u</u> t]	the part of a plant that grows under the ground
rose	[r <u>o</u> uz]	a flower with a pleasant smell and sharp points (called thorns) on its stems

seed	[s <u>ɪ</u> d]	the small, hard part of a plant from which a new plant grows
shade	[ʃ <u>eɪ</u> d]	an area where direct sunlight does not reach; <i>in the shade</i>
shed	[ʃ <u>ɛ</u> d]	a small building where you store things
shrub	[ʃr <u>ʌ</u> b]	a small bush
soil	[s <u>ɔɪ</u> l]	the substance on the surface of the Earth in which plants grow
sprinkler	[spr <u>ɪ</u> ŋklər]	a machine that spreads drops of water over an area of grass
stalk	[st <u>ɔ</u> k]	the thin part of a flower, leaf, or fruit that joins it to the plant or tree
stem	[st <u>ɛ</u> m]	the long, thin part of a plant that the flowers and leaves grow on
sunflower	[s <u>ʌ</u> nflaʊər]	a very tall plant with large yellow flowers
thorn	[θ <u>ɔ</u> rn]	a sharp point on some plants and trees

EXAMPLES

Water each plant daily.

Plant the seeds in small plastic pots.

They grow well in sun or partial shade.

This book tells you how to choose shrubs for your garden.

The soil here is good for growing vegetables.

A single flower grows on each long stalk.

He cut the stem and gave her the flower.

He removed a thorn from his foot.

tree	[tri]	a tall plant that lives for a long time. It has a trunk, branches, and leaves; <i>apple trees</i>
trunk	[trʌŋk]	the large main stem of a tree from which the branches grow
tulip	[tulɪp]	a flower that grows in the spring and is shaped like a cup
vase	[veɪs, vɑːz]	a container that is used for holding flowers
violet	[vaɪələɪt]	a small plant that has purple or white flowers in the spring
watering can	[wɔːtərɪŋ kæn]	a container with a handle that is used to water plants

weed	[w <u>ɪ</u> d]	a plant that grows where you do not want it
weedkiller	[w <u>ɪ</u> dkɪlər]	a substance that you put on your garden to kill weeds
weeping willow	[w <u>ɪ</u> pɪŋ w <u>ɪ</u> ləʊ]	a type of tree with long thin branches that hang down to the ground
wheelbarrow	[w <u>ɪ</u> lbærəʊ]	an open container with one wheel and two handles, that is used for moving things such as earth or plants
window box	[w <u>ɪ</u> ndəʊ bɒks]	a long narrow container on a shelf at the bottom of a window that is used for growing plants
woods	[w <u>ʊ</u> dz]	a large area of trees growing near each other
yew	[y <u>u</u>]	an evergreen tree with sharp leaves that are broad and flat, and red berries

VERBS

blossom	[blɒsəm]	to produce flowers
cultivate	[kʌltɪveɪt]	to grow plants on a piece of land

flower [flaʊər] to produce flowers

EXAMPLES

There was a small vase of flowers on the table.

The garden was full of weeds.

Rain begins to fall, and peach trees blossom.

These plants will flower soon.

grow	[grəʊ]	1 to gradually become bigger 2 used for saying that a plant or a tree lives in a particular place 3 to put seeds or young plants in the ground and take care of them
mow	[məʊ]	to cut an area of grass using a machine (called a mower); <i>mow the lawn</i>
pick	[pɪk]	to take flowers, fruit, or leaves from a plant or tree
plant	[plænt]	to put something into the ground so that it will grow
prune	[pruːn]	to cut out parts of a bush or tree in order to make it grow thicker and better

tend	[tɛnd]	to look after your garden and the plants in it
water	[wɔtər]	to pour water over plants in order to help them to grow
weed	[wi:d]	to remove the weeds from an area

ADJECTIVES

deciduous	[dɪsɪdʒuəs]	a deciduous tree loses its leaves in the fall every year
evergreen	[ɛvərgrɪn]	an evergreen tree has green leaves all year
indoor	[ɪndɔr]	done or used inside a building; <i>indoor plants</i>
leafy	[li:fi]	1 having a lot of leaves; <i>leafy trees</i> 2 you say that a place is leafy when there are a lot of trees and plants there
mature	[mətjʊər, -tʊər, -tʃʊər]	fully grown; <i>mature fruit trees</i>
outdoor	[aʊtdɔr]	happening outside and not in a

building

overgrown

[oʊvərgroʊn]

thickly covered with plants that
have not been looked after

EXAMPLES

There were roses growing by the side of the door.

He plans to plant fruit trees.

Try not to walk on the flower beds while you are weeding.

shady

[ʃeɪdi]

not in direct sunlight

PHRASE

**“Stay off the
grass”**

used on signs to tell people not
to walk on the grass

IDIOMS

**have a green
thumb**

to be good at making plants
grow (*In British English, use **have
green fingers***)

**have green
fingers (BRIT)**

see **have a green thumb**

reading and writing

NOUNS

alphabet	[ælfəbet, -bɪt]	a set of letters that is used for writing words
article	[ɑrtɪkəl]	a piece of writing in a newspaper or magazine; <i>a newspaper article</i>
author	[ɔθər]	the person who wrote a book or a document
ballpoint pen	[bɔlpɔɪnt pɛn]	a pen with a small metal ball at the tip (<i>In British English, use Biro</i>)
Biro (BRIT)		see ballpoint pen
book	[bʊk]	a number of pieces of paper, usually with words printed on them, that are fastened together and bound inside a cover
capitals	[kæpɪtəlz]	letters in the form that is used at the beginning of sentences or names, for example “T,” “B,”

and “F,” rather than “t,” “b,”
and “f.”

chapter	[tʃæptər]	a part of a book; <i>See chapter 4.</i>
character	[kærɪktər]	one of the people in a story
colon	[kəʊlən]	the punctuation mark (:) that you can use to join parts of a sentence
comic book	[kɒmɪk bʊk]	a magazine that contains stories told in pictures
comma	[kɒmə]	the punctuation mark (,) that you use to separate parts of a sentence or items in a list
conclusion	[kənklʊʒən]	the ending of a story
correction fluid	[kərəkʃən flʊɪd]	a white liquid that you use to cover written mistakes
cover	[kʌvər]	the outside part of a book or a magazine

EXAMPLES

The Russian alphabet has 31 letters.

Jill Phillips is the author of “Give Your Child Music.”

Please write your name and address in capitals.

The main character in “Great Expectations” is Pip.

Her photograph was on the front cover of “Zoo” magazine.

diary	[daɪəri]	a book in which you record what happens in your life
dictionary	[dɪkʃənəri]	a book in which the words and phrases of a language are listed, together with their meanings
document	[dɒkjəmənt]	an official piece of paper with important information on it
draft	[dræft]	a piece of writing that you have not finished working on; <i>a first draft</i>
e-book	[i bʊk]	short for “electronic book:” a book that you can read on a computer screen
editor	[ɛdɪtər]	someone whose job is to check and correct texts
encyclopedia	[ɪnsaɪkləpɪdiə]	a book or a CD-ROM containing facts about many different subjects
eraser	[ɪreɪsər]	a small object that you use for removing marks you have made

		with a pencil (<i>In British English, use rubber</i>)
essay	[ɛsɛɪ]	a short piece of writing on a subject
exclamation mark (BRIT)		see exclamation point
exclamation point	[ɛkskləmeɪʃən pɔɪnt]	the punctuation mark (!) that you use at the end of a sentence to show excitement or anger (<i>In British English, use exclamation mark</i>)
fairy tale	[fɛəri teɪl]	a story for children about magic and fairies
fiction	[fɪkʃən]	books and stories about people and events that are not real
full stop (BRIT)		see period
handwriting	[hændraɪtɪŋ]	your style of writing with a pen or a pencil
headline	[hɛdlaɪn]	the title of a newspaper story, printed in large letters
hero	[hɪərəʊ]	the main male character of a

story

EXAMPLES

I have kept a diary since I was eleven.

She writes romantic fiction.

The address was in Anna's handwriting.

The headline read "Government plans to build new hospitals."

heroine	[hɛrəʊɪn]	the main female character of a story
hyphen	[haɪfən]	the punctuation sign (-) that you use to join two words together, as in "left-handed"
index	[ɪndɛks]	a list at the back of a book that tells you what is in the book and on which pages you can find each item
ink	[ɪŋk]	the colored liquid that you use for writing or printing
introduction	[ɪntrədʌkʃən]	the part at the beginning of a book that tells you what the book is about
journal	[dʒɜːrnəl]	1 a magazine or a newspaper

		that deals with a special subject; <i>an academic journal</i> 2 same as diary
journalist	[dʒɜːnəlɪst]	someone whose job is to collect news stories and write about them for newspapers, magazines, television, or radio
language	[læŋɡwɪdʒ]	1 a system of sounds and written symbols that people of a particular country or region use in talking or writing; <i>the English language</i> 2 the use of a system of communication that has a set of sounds or written symbols; <i>improve your language skills</i>
legend	[lɛdʒənd]	a very old and popular story
letter	[lɛtər]	1 a message that you write or type on paper and send to someone; <i>send someone a letter</i> 2 a written symbol that represents a sound in a language; <i>the letters of the alphabet</i>

library	[laɪbrəri]	a place where books, newspapers, DVDs, and music are kept for people to use or borrow
----------------	------------	---

EXAMPLES

The letter was written in blue ink.

literature	[lɪtərətʃər, -tʃʊr]	books, plays, and poetry that most people consider to be of high quality
magazine	[mæɡəzɪn, -zɪn]	a thin book with stories and pictures that you can buy every week or every month
myth	[mɪθ]	an ancient story about gods and magic; <i>a Greek myth</i>
narrator	[næreɪtər]	the person who tells the story in a book
newspaper	[njuːzpeɪpər, nus-]	a number of large sheets of folded paper, with news, advertisements, and other information printed on them
nonfiction	[nɒnfɪkʃən]	writing that is about real people

		and events rather than imaginary ones
novel	[nɒvəl]	a long written story about imaginary people and events
novelist	[nɒvəlɪst]	someone who writes novels
page	[peɪdʒ]	one side of a piece of paper in a book, a magazine, or a newspaper; <i>Turn to page 7.</i>
paper	[peɪpər]	1 a material that you write on; <i>a piece of paper</i> 2 a newspaper
paperback	[peɪpərbæk]	a book with a thin cardboard or paper cover
paragraph	[pærəgræf]	a section of a piece of writing that begins on a new line and contains more than one sentence
pen	[pɛn]	a long thin object that you use for writing with ink
pencil	[pɛnsəl]	a long thin piece of wood with a black substance through the middle that you use for writing

EXAMPLES

Ayumi is studying English literature at Leeds University.

I read about the fire in the newspaper.

The library contains both fiction and nonfiction.

My favorite novel is *War and Peace*.

I'm going to the store to buy a paper.

I'll buy the book when it comes out in paperback.

period	[p <u>ɪ</u> riəd]	the punctuation mark (.) that you use at the end of a sentence (<i>In British English, use full stop</i>)
play	[pl <u>eɪ</u>]	a piece of writing performed in a theatre, on the radio, or on television
plot	[pl <u>ɒ</u> t]	a series of events that make up the story of a book
poem	[p <u>oʊ</u> əm]	a piece of writing in which the words are chosen for their beauty and sound, and are arranged in short lines
poet	[p <u>oʊ</u> ɪt]	someone who writes poems
poetry	[p <u>oʊ</u> ɪtri]	the form of literature that consists of poems
punctuation	[p <u>ʌ</u> ŋktʃu <u>eɪ</u> ʃən]	signs such as (), !, or ? that you use to divide writing into

		sentences and phrases
question mark	[kwɛstʃən mark]	the punctuation mark (?) that is used in writing at the end of a question
quotation	[kwoutɛɪʃən]	a sentence or a phrase from a book, a poem, a speech, or a play
quotation marks	[kwoutɛɪʃən marks]	the punctuation marks (“ ”) or (‘ ’) that are used in writing to show where speech or a quotation begins and ends
report	[rɪpɔrt]	1 a newspaper article that gives information about something that happened; <i>a newspaper report</i> 2 a piece of work that a student writes on a particular subject; <i>a book report</i>
rubber (BRIT)		see eraser
scene	[sin]	a part of a play or a book in which all the events happen in the same place
script	[skɪpt]	the written words that actors

speaking in a play

EXAMPLES

Hamlet is my favorite play.

He told me the plot of his new novel.

We studied French poetry last term.

Check your spelling and punctuation.

The opening scene shows a mother and daughter having an argument.

semicolon	[sɛmɪkəʊlən]	the mark (;) that you use in writing to separate different parts of a sentence
sentence	[sɛntəns]	a group of words that tells you something or asks a question
story	[stɔːri]	a description of imaginary people and events, that is intended to entertain people
summary	[sʌməri]	a short description of something that gives the main points but not the details
table of contents	[teɪbəl əv kɒntents]	a list of chapters that is shown at the beginning of a book
thesaurus (PL)	[θɪzɔːrəs]	a reference book in which words with similar meanings are

thesauruses, thesauri	[θɪsɔːraɪ]	grouped together
thriller	[θrɪlər]	an exciting book or play about a crime
title	[taɪtəl]	the name of something such as a book or a play
translation	[trænzleɪʃən]	a piece of writing or speech that has been put into a different language
vocabulary	[vɒkəˈbʌləri]	<p>1 all the words that someone knows in a particular language; <i>She has a large vocabulary.</i></p> <p>2 all the words in a language; <i>a new word in the English vocabulary</i></p> <p>3 the words that you use when you are talking about a particular subject; <i>technical vocabulary</i></p>
word	[wɜːd]	a unit of language with meaning
writer	[raɪtər]	someone whose job is to write books, stories, or articles

EXAMPLES

Here is a short summary of the news.

The title of the novel is *Jane Eyre*.

The Italian word for “love” is “amore.”

writing [ˈraɪtɪŋ]
1 something that has been written or printed
2 any piece of written work; *a piece of writing*
3 the activity of writing, especially of writing books for money

VERBS

copy [kɒpi] to write something that is exactly like another thing

delete [dɪlɪt] to put a line through something that has been written down

look something up to try to find something in a book such as a dictionary

print [prɪnt] 1 to use a machine to put words or pictures on paper; *print copies of a novel*
2 to write letters that are not joined together; *print your name*

publish	[pʌblɪʃ]	to prepare and print copies of a book, a magazine, or a newspaper
read	[rɪd]	1 to look at written words and understand them; <i>read a book</i> 2 to say words that you can see; <i>read someone a story</i>
rhyme	[raɪm]	to end with a very similar sound to another word; “June” rhymes with “moon.”
set	[sɛt]	if a story is set in a particular place or time, the events in it take place in that place or time
skim	[skɪm]	to read something quickly

EXAMPLES

Lydia tried to read the writing on the next page.

Elizabeth Johnston teaches creative writing at Concordia University.

I didn't know what “subscribe” meant, so I looked it up in the dictionary.

HarperCollins will publish his new novel in March.

The novel is set in China in 1900.

He skimmed the pages quickly, then read them again more carefully.

spell	[spɛl]	1 to write or speak each letter of
--------------	--------	------------------------------------

a word in the correct order; *How do you spell "potato"?*

2 to have a good knowledge of the correct order of letters in words; *Many students cannot spell.*

translate [trænzleɪt] to say or write something again in a different language

type [taɪp] to write something using a machine such as a computer

write [raɪt] **1** to use a pen or a pencil to produce words, letters, or numbers
2 to create something such as a book or a poem
3 to give someone information, ask them something, or express your feelings in a letter or an email; *write to someone*

EXAMPLES

Martin Luther translated the Bible into German.

Please write your name and address on the back of the photo.

She writes articles for French newspapers.

routines

NOUNS

chore	[tʃɔːr]	a job that you have to do, for example, cleaning the house; <i>household chores; do the chores</i>
day off	[deɪ ɔːf]	a day when you do not go to work; <i>have a day off</i>
free time	[fri taɪm]	time when you are not working or studying, when you can do things that you enjoy; <i>in your free time</i>
habit	[hæbɪt]	something that you do often or regularly; <i>a bad habit; an old habit</i>
hobby	[hɒbi]	an activity that you enjoy doing in your free time
housework	[haʊswɜːrk]	the work that you do to keep a house clean and tidy; <i>do housework</i>
lifestyle	[laɪfstɑɪl]	the way someone has chosen to

live and behave; *a healthy lifestyle*

lunch break	[lʌntʃ breɪk]	the period in the middle of the day when you stop work in order to have a meal; <i>have your lunch break</i>
routine	[ruːtɪn]	the usual activities that you do every day; <i>your daily routine</i>
rush hour	[rʌʃ aʊər]	one of the periods of the day when most people are traveling to or from work; <i>rush-hour traffic</i>
time off	[taɪm ɔf]	a period of time when you do not work; <i>take time off; give someone time off</i>

VERBS

commute	[kəmyʊt]	to travel to work or school
shave	[ʃeɪv]	to remove hair from your face or body

EXAMPLES

She's always busy and has lots of hobbies.

Skiing is an expensive hobby.

I had to drive eight miles during rush hour.

Many women shave their legs.

He always shaves before breakfast.

**do the
shopping**

to go to stores to buy things

**drop someone
off**

to take someone to a place in a car and leave them there

get dressed

to put clothes on yourself

get ready

to completely prepare yourself for something

get up

to get out of bed

go home

to return to the place where you live

go to bed

to lie down in your bed to sleep

go to sleep

to fall asleep

go to work

to go to the place where you do your job

take a bath

to sit or lie down in a bath filled with water to wash your body

take a shower

to wash yourself by standing under the water that comes from a shower

have breakfast	to eat the first meal of the day
have dinner	to eat the main meal of the day, which is usually served in the evening
have lunch	to eat the meal that you have in the middle of the day
make dinner	to prepare the main meal of the day, which is usually served in the evening
pick someone up	to collect someone from a place, often in a car
set your alarm	to adjust an alarm clock so that it will wake you at a particular time
sleep in	to sleep until after the time you usually get up in the morning

EXAMPLES

Dad dropped me off at school on his way to work.

It takes her a long time to get ready for school.

They have to get up early in the morning.

We went to bed at about 10 p.m.

It was time to go to work.

Would you like to stay and have dinner?

I pick the children up from school at three o'clock.

Dad set the alarm for eight the next day.

tidy up

to organize a place by putting things in their usual places

wake up

to stop sleeping

ADVERBS

during the week

on any day from Monday to Friday

every day

on each day without exception

every week

at least one time each week

in the afternoon

during the part of the day that begins at lunchtime and ends at about six o'clock

in the evening

during the part of the day between the end of the afternoon and midnight

in the morning

during the part of the day between the time that people usually wake up and noon

on weekends

on Saturdays and Sundays

IDIOMS

**burn the
candle at both
ends**

to stay up very late at night and
get up very early in the morning

**go out like a
light**

to fall asleep very quickly

on the go

always busy and active

EXAMPLES

It was cold and dark when I woke up at 6:30.

He never goes out during the week.

They got up every day before dawn.

He calls his mother every week.

He's arriving in the afternoon.

We usually have dinner at seven in the evening.

The first thing people do in the morning is open the curtains.

She was never at home on weekends.

I've been on the go all day.

school

NOUNS

assembly	[əʒembli]	a meeting of all the teachers and students at the beginning of a school day; <i>a school assembly</i>
attendance	[ətendəns]	an official list of when students attend a class; <i>take attendance</i> (<i>In British English, use register</i>)
blackboard	[blækbɔ:d]	a chalkboard
box lunch	[bɒks lʌntʃ]	food that you take to school and eat as your lunch; <i>take/have a box lunch</i> (<i>In British English, use packed lunch</i>)
break (BRIT)		see recess
bully	[bʊli]	someone who uses their strength or power to frighten other people; <i>school bullies</i>
cafeteria	[kæfɪtɪəriə]	a place in a school where students can buy and eat lunch;

the school cafeteria (In British English, use canteen)

canteen (BRIT)

see **cafeteria**

caretaker
(BRIT)

see **janitor**

chalkboard [tʃɔːkbɔːrd]

a big, dark-colored board for writing on in a classroom

class [klæs]

1 a group of students who learn at school together

2 a time when you learn something at school

classroom [klæsrum]

a room in a school where lessons take place

desk [dɛsk]

a table that you sit at to write or work

education [ɛdʒʊkeɪʃən]

teaching and learning;
secondary/elementary education;
higher/continuing education;
sex/health education

EXAMPLES

We have an assembly on Tuesday and Friday mornings.

He spent six months in a class with younger students.

Classes start at 9 o'clock.

We do lots of reading in class.

elementary school	[ɛlɪmɛntəri skul, -tri]	a school for children between the ages of five and 11 (<i>In British English, use primary school</i>)
essay	[ɛseɪ]	a short piece of writing on a subject; <i>write an essay</i>
exam	[ɪgzæm]	a formal test that you take to show your knowledge of a subject; <i>take/sit an exam; pass/fail an exam; exam results</i>
examination	[ɪgzæmɪneɪʃən]	[FORMAL] exam
exercise	[ɛksərsaɪz]	an activity that you do in order to practice a skill; <i>a writing exercise; an exercise book</i>
grade	[greɪd]	1 the mark that a teacher gives you to show how good your work is (<i>In British English, use mark</i>) 2 a group of classes taken by children who are of a similar age

gym	[dʒɪm]	a large room with equipment for doing physical exercises
holiday (BRIT)		see vacation
homework	[həʊmwɜrk]	school work that teachers give to students to do at home in the evening or during the weekend; <i>do your homework</i>
janitor	[dʒænitər]	someone who looks after a school building and the area around it; <i>a school janitor (In British English, use caretaker)</i>
lesson	[lɛsən]	a time when you learn about a particular subject; <i>a history lesson</i>
lunchbox	[lʌntʃbɒks]	a small container for taking lunch to school
mark	[mɑrk]	a number or letter on a student's work to show how good it is
mistake	[mɪsteɪk]	something that is not correct

EXAMPLES

She always got the highest grades.

He stayed there until the fifth grade, when he was about eleven.

I have homework every day.

Tony made three spelling mistakes in this essay.

packed lunch

(BRIT)

see **box lunch**

PE

[pɪ i]

short for “physical education:” a class in which students do physical exercises or sports

period

[pɪəriəd]

one of the parts of the school day when lessons take place; *a free period*

playground

[pleɪgraʊnd]

a piece of land where children can play at school; *the school playground*

preschool

[prɪskʊl]

a school for children between the ages of two and five or six

primary

school *(BRIT)*

see **elementary school**

principal

[prɪnsɪpəl]

a teacher who is in charge of a public school

private school [praɪvɪt skʊl]

a school that parents have to pay for their children to go to

public school	[pʌblik skul]	<p>1 in the USA, Australia, and some other countries, a school that usually provides free education</p> <p>2 in the UK, a private school that provides secondary education which parents have to pay for</p>
pupil	[pyupɪl]	one of the children who go to a school
recess	[rɪsɛs, rɪsɛs]	a period of time between classes at school when students can play or eat (<i>In British English, use break</i>)
register (BRIT)		see attendance
result	[rɪzʌlt]	facts such as a score that you get at the end of a competition or a test; <i>test results</i>
schedule	[skɛdʒul, -uəl]	a list that shows the times in the week when particular subjects are taught; <i>an exam schedule</i>
school	[skul]	a place where people go to learn; <i>a school bus; school lunch</i>

EXAMPLES

He goes to a private school.

After the first two lessons, we have recess.

school rules	[skul ru:lz]	a list of things that students must do or must not do when they are at school; <i>obey school rules</i>
school uniform	[skul yunifɔ:m]	the special clothes that some students wear at school; <i>wear/have a school uniform</i>
schoolchildren	[skultʃɪldrən]	children who go to school
secondary school	[sekəndəri skul]	the same as high school
semester	[sɪməstər]	one of the periods of time that a school year is divided into; <i>this/last semester</i>
smart board™	[smɑ:t bɔ:d]	a large electronic board that can be used for teaching and learning
special education	[speʃəl ɛdʒukerɪʃən]	teaching for students who need extra help with their studies

state school	[st <u>ɛ</u> t sk <u>u</u> l]	a government school that children can attend without having to pay; <i>go to a state school</i>
student	[st <u>u</u> d <u>ə</u> nt]	a person who is studying at a school
subject	[s <u>ʌ</u> bdʒ <u>ɪ</u> kt]	an area of knowledge that you study in school
teacher	[t <u>ɪ</u> tʃ <u>ə</u> r]	a person whose job is to give lessons in a subject at a school; <i>an English teacher; a science teacher; a elementary/high school school teacher</i>
term	[t <u>ɜ</u> rm]	a semester
test	[t <u>ɛ</u> st]	a series of questions that students must answer to show how much they know about a subject; <i>pass/fail a test</i>
textbook	[t <u>ɛ</u> kstb <u>ʊ</u> k]	a book containing facts about a particular subject
tutor	[t <u>u</u> t <u>ə</u> r]	someone who gives private lessons to one student or a very

small group of students; *a private tutor; an English tutor*

EXAMPLES

The school's principal will retire at the end of the semester.

Math is my favorite subject.

vacation	[veɪkeɪʃən]	the time when children do not have to go to school; <i>summer vacation (In British English, use holiday)</i>
whiteboard	[waɪtbɔːrd]	a shiny, white board that teachers draw or write on, using special pens
VERBS		
ask	[ɑːsk, æsk]	to say something in the form of a question; <i>ask a question</i>
answer	[ˈænsər]	to write or say what you think is the correct answer to a question; <i>answer a question</i>
bully	[ˈbʊli]	to use your strength or power to frighten other people

cheat	[tʃi:t]	to do something that is not honest or fair, often because you want to get something
correct	[kə'rekt]	to look at a piece of writing and mark the mistakes in it; <i>correct students' work; correct mistakes</i>
expel	[ɪk'spɛl]	to officially tell a student to leave a school permanently
fail	[feɪl]	not to pass an exam or a test; <i>fail an exam</i>
grade	[greɪd]	to judge the quality of a test or essay using with a letter or number; <i>grade a student's paper</i>
learn	[lɜ:n]	to get knowledge or a skill by studying
let out		to start summer vacation
mark	[mɑ:rk]	to write a number or letter on a student's work to show how good it is; <i>mark an essay</i>
pass	[pæs]	to succeed in an exam; <i>pass an exam</i>
punish	[pʌnɪʃ]	to make someone suffer in some

way because they have done something wrong

EXAMPLES

I think they were bullied in school.

Students sometimes cheated in order to get into top schools.

She was expelled for cheating on an exam.

The schools let out this weekend.

put up your hand

to raise your hand in the air in order to show that you want to answer a question

read

[rɪd]

to look at written words and understand them; *learn to read and write*

repeat

[rɪpɪt]

to say or write the same thing that someone else has said or written

review

[rɪvjuː]

to study something again in order to prepare for an exam (*In British English, use **revise***)

revise (BRIT)

see **review**

study

[stʌdi]

to spend time learning about a

science

NOUNS

acid	[<u>æ</u> sɪd]	a chemical, usually a liquid, that can burn your skin and cause damage to other substances; <i>citric acid</i>
astronaut	[<u>æ</u> strɒnɔt]	a person who is trained to travel in space
astronomy	[<u>æ</u> strɒnəmi]	the scientific study of the stars, planets, and other natural objects in space
atom	[<u>æ</u> təm]	the very smallest part of a substance
axis (PL) axes	[<u>æ</u> ksɪs] [<u>æ</u> ksɪz]	1 an imaginary line through the middle of something; <i>the Earth's axis</i> 2 one of the two lines of a graph on which you mark points to show amounts; <i>the vertical/horizontal axis</i>

botany	[bɒtəni]	the scientific study of plants
cell	[sɛl]	the smallest part of an animal or plant; <i>brain cells</i>
charge	[tʃɑrdʒ]	the amount or type of electrical force that something has; <i>an electrical charge</i>
chemical	[kɛmɪkəl]	a substance that is used in a chemical process or made by a chemical process
chemist	[kɛmɪst]	a scientist who studies chemistry
chemistry	[kɛmɪstri]	the science of the structure of gases, liquids, and solids, and how they change
circuit	[sɜrkɪt]	a complete path that electricity can flow around; <i>an electrical circuit</i>
compound	[kɒmpaʊnd]	a substance that is made from two or more elements, for example, carbon dioxide
current	[kɜrənt]	a steady flow of water, air, or energy
electricity	[ɪlɛktrɪsɪti,	energy that is used for

	<u>i</u> lek-]	producing heat and light, and to provide power for machines
element	[<u>ɛ</u> lɪmənt]	a basic chemical substance such as gold, oxygen, or carbon
energy	[<u>ɛ</u> nərdʒi]	the power from electricity or the sun, for example, that makes machines work or provides heat

EXAMPLES

The device converts energy from the sun into electrical energy.

evolution	[i <u>v</u> əluʃən, <u>ɛ</u> v-]	a process in which animals or plants slowly change over many years
experiment	[ɪk <u>s</u> pɛrɪmənt]	a scientific test that you do in order to discover what happens to something; <i>conduct an experiment</i>
force	[f <u>ɔ</u> rs]	the pulling or pushing effect that one thing has on another; <i>the Earth's gravitational force</i>
formula (PL) formulas,	[f <u>ɔ</u> rmjələ] [f <u>ɔ</u> rmjəli]	1 a group of letters, numbers, or other symbols that represents a

formulae		scientific rule 2 a description of the chemical elements that a substance contains
fuse	[fy <u>u</u> z]	a small wire in a piece of electrical equipment that stops it from working when too much electricity passes through it
gene	[dʒ <u>i</u> n]	the part of a cell that controls a person's, an animal's, or a plant's physical characteristics, growth, and development
genetics	[dʒ <u>i</u> ng <u>t</u> ɪks]	the study of how qualities are passed on from parents to children
gravity	[gr <u>æ</u> v <u>i</u> ti]	the force that makes things fall to the ground
hormone	[h <u>ɔ</u> rm <u>o</u> un]	a chemical substance in your body that affects the way your body works
laboratory	[l <u>æ</u> br <u>ə</u> t <u>ɔ</u> ri]	a building or a room where scientific work is done
lens	[l <u>ɛ</u> nz]	a thin, curved piece of glass or

plastic used in things such as cameras and glasses. A lens makes things look larger, smaller, or clearer.

magnet [mæɡnɪt] a piece of special metal that attracts iron or steel towards it

EXAMPLES

He developed a mathematical formula describing the distances of the planets from the Sun.

The Earth's gravity pulls the oceans in daily tides.

microscope [maɪkrəskəʊp] a scientific instrument that makes very small objects look bigger

molecule [məˈlɪkjʊl] the smallest amount of a chemical substance that can exist by itself

organism [ɔːrgənɪzəm] a living thing

physics [fɪzɪks] the scientific study of things such as heat, light and sound

power [paʊər] energy that can be used for making electricity or for making

machines work

radar	[reɪdər]	a way of discovering the position of objects when they cannot be seen, by using radio signals
science	[saɪəns]	the study of natural things
scientist	[saɪəntɪst]	someone whose job is to teach or do research in science
spacecraft	[speɪskræft]	a vehicle that can travel in space
specimen	[spɛsɪmɪn]	an example or a small amount of something; <i>examine a specimen</i>
test tube	[tɛst tʌb]	a small tube-shaped container made from glass. Test tubes are used in laboratories.
theory	[θɪəri]	an idea or a set of ideas that tries to explain something
volt	[voʊlt]	a unit used for measuring electricity; <i>a 12-volt battery</i>
watt	[wɒt]	a unit for measuring electrical power; <i>a 60-watt light bulb</i>

VERBS

dilute	[daɪlʊt]	to add water to another liquid
dissect	[dɪsɛkt, daɪ-]	to cut open a dead body in order to examine it

EXAMPLES

The system creates enough power to run four lights.

The mystery objects showed up on the plane's radar.

Albert Einstein developed the Theory of Relativity.

Dilute the fruit juice thoroughly.

dissolve	[dɪzɒlv]	to become completely mixed with a liquid
evaporate	[ɪvəpəreɪt]	to change from a liquid into a gas
evolve	[ɪvɒlv]	to gradually develop over a period of time into something different
measure	[mɛʒər]	to find out the size of something
test	[tɛst]	to use something to find out what condition it is in, or how well it works

ADJECTIVES

atomic	[ətɒmɪk]	relating to atoms or to power that is produced by splitting atoms
chemical	[kɛmɪkəl]	relating to chemistry or chemicals; <i>a chemical reaction</i>
electric	[ɪlɛktrɪk]	1 working using electricity; <i>an electric car</i> 2 carrying electricity; <i>electric cables</i>
nuclear	[njuːkliər]	relating to the energy that is released when the central parts of atoms are split or combined; <i>a nuclear power station</i>
scientific	[saɪəntɪfɪk]	relating to science; <i>a scientific experiment</i>

EXAMPLES

Boil the water and sugar until the sugar has dissolved completely.

Water evaporates from the oceans into the atmosphere.

Humans have evolved with the power to hold things.

He spends a lot of time conducting scientific research.

shopping

NOUNS

baker's	[beɪkərz]	a store where bread and cakes are sold
barcode	[bɑːrkəʊd]	a set of lines on a product that tell the computer its price
bargain	[bɑːɡɪn]	something that is sold at a lower price than usual
bookshop (BRIT)		see bookstore
bookstore	[bʊkstɔː]	a store where books are sold (<i>In British English, use bookshop</i>)
boutique	[butɪk]	a small store that sells fashionable clothes, shoes, or jewelry
business hours	[ˈbɪznɪs aʊəz]	the hours that a store is open
butcher's	[ˈbʊtʃəz]	a store where meat is sold
candy store	[kændi stɔː]	a store where candy is sold
carrier bag		see shopping bag

(BRIT)

cash	[kæʃ]	coins and bills, rather than a check or bank card
catalog	[kætəˈlɒɡ]	a list of things you can buy from a particular company
change	[tʃeɪndʒ]	the money that you get back when you pay with more money than something costs
checkout	[tʃɛkɑʊt]	the place in a store where you pay
check	[tʃɛk]	a printed piece of paper from a bank that you write an amount of money on and use to pay for things; <i>pay by check</i> (In British English, use cheque)
chemist's		see pharmacy
(BRIT)		
cheque (BRIT)		see check
clothing store	[kloʊðɪŋ stɔː]	a store where you can buy clothes

EXAMPLES

I got these cakes from the baker's this morning.

If you go early, you could get a real bargain.

Contact them during their business hours.

I'm afraid we only accept cash.

Here's your change.

complaint	[kəmpleɪnt]	when you say that you are not satisfied with the service or products you have received
credit card	[krɛdɪt kɑːd]	a plastic card that you use to buy goods now and pay for them later; <i>pay by credit card</i>
customer	[kʌstəmə]	someone who buys something from a store or a website
department	[dɪpɑːtmənt]	one of the sections in a department store; <i>the toy department</i>
department store	[dɪpɑːtmənt stɔː]	a large store that sells many different types of goods
discount	[dɪskaʊnt]	a reduction in the usual price of something
fishmonger's	[fɪʃmɒŋgəz, -mɒŋ-]	a store where fish is sold (<i>mainly BRIT</i>)
florist's	[flɔːrɪsts]	a store where flowers are sold

gift shop	[gɪft ʃɒp]	a store that sells things that people give as presents
goods	[gʊdz]	things that you can buy or sell; <i>electrical goods</i>
greengrocer's	[grɪŋɡrəʊsərz]	a store where fruit and vegetables are sold (<i>mainly BRIT</i>)
grocery store	[grəʊsəri stɔːr, grəʊsri]	a store that sells food and other things that you need at home
jeweler's	[dʒuːələrz]	a store where jewelry is sold (<i>In British English, use jeweller's</i>)
jeweller's (<i>BRIT</i>)		see jeweler's
line	[laɪn]	a line of people who are waiting for something; <i>wait in a line</i> (<i>In British English, use queue</i>)
mail order	[meɪl ɔːdər]	a system in which you choose goods from a catalog and they are sent to you in the mail
market	[mɑːrkɪt]	a place where people buy and sell goods on tables; <i>a farmers' market</i>

EXAMPLES

I want to make a complaint.

newsagent's

(BRIT)

see **newsstand**

newsstand

[nʊzstænd]

a place where newspapers and magazines are sold (*In British English, use newsagent's*)

online store

[ɒnlain stɔː]

a website with photos and details of goods that customers can buy

pharmacy

[fɑːməsi]

a store that sells medicines and beauty products (*In British English, use chemist's*)

price

[praɪs]

the amount of money that you have to pay when you buy something

queue *(BRIT)*

see **line**

receipt

[rɪsɪt]

a piece of paper that shows that you have paid for something

refund

[rɪfʌnd]

money that is given back to you when you return goods to a

		store
sale	[seɪl]	an occasion when a store sells things at a lower price than usual
sales clerk	[seɪlz klɜːrk]	someone whose job is to deal with customers in a store (<i>In British English, use shop assistant</i>)
shoe store	[ʃuː stɔːr]	a store where shoes are sold
shop (BRIT)		see store
shop assistant (BRIT)		see sales clerk
shopping	[ˈʃɒpɪŋ]	the activity of going to stores to buy things; <i>go shopping; do the shopping</i>
shopping bag	[ˈʃɒpɪŋ bæɡ]	a large bag that is used for carrying things that you have bought (<i>In British English, use carrier bag</i>)
shopping cart	[ˈʃɒpɪŋ kɑːt]	a wire or plastic basket on wheels in which you put all the things that you want to buy in a

particular store (*In British English, use shopping trolley*)

EXAMPLES

The price of bread went up by 20 percent last year.

Please make sure you keep your receipt.

I'd like a refund.

I bought these jeans in the sale.

shopping center	[ʃɒpɪŋ sɛntər]	an area in a town where there are a lot of stores
shopping list	[ʃɒpɪŋ lɪst]	a list of all the things that you want to buy
shopping trolley (BRIT)		see shopping cart
size	[saɪz]	how big or small something is
special offer	[spɛʃəl ɔfər]	a low price that is offered by a store for a period of time
stationer's	[steɪʃənərs]	a store where you can buy things for writing such as paper, pens, and pencils
store	[stɔr]	a place where you buy things (<i>In British English, use shop</i>)

supermarket	[sʊpə'mɑ:kɪt]	a large store that sells food and other products for the home
till	[tɪl]	a machine that holds money in a store
toy store	[tɔɪ stɔː]	a store where toys are sold
window shopping	[wɪndəʊ ʃɒpɪŋ]	the activity of looking in stores without buying anything

VERBS

browse	[braʊz]	to look at things in a store, without buying anything
buy	[baɪ]	to get something by paying money for it
close	[klaʊz]	when a store closes, it stops being open, so that people cannot go in and buy things
cost	[kɒst]	to have as a price
open	[əʊpən]	when a store opens, people can go in and buy things
pay	[peɪ]	to give someone an amount of money for something that you are buying

return [rɪtʊrn] to bring back something you bought because you do not want it any more

EXAMPLES

Do you have this in a smaller size?

How much does it cost?

Can I pay with this card?

You may return any goods within 14 days.

sell [sɛl] to have something available for people to buy

spend [spɛnd] to use money to buy things

try something on to put a piece of clothing on in order to see if it fits

ADJECTIVES

cheap [tʃi:p] **1** costing little money or less than you expected
2 costing less money than similar products but often of bad quality

closed [kloʊzd] a store that is closed is not open, so people cannot go in and buy

		things
expensive	[ɪkspɛnsɪv]	costing a lot of money
in stock	[ɪn stɔk]	available for customers to buy in a store
on sale	[ɒn seɪl]	1 available for people to buy 2 available to buy at a lower price than usual
open	[əʊpən]	when a store is open, people can go in and buy things
out of stock	[aʊt əv stɔk]	no longer available for customers to buy
reduced	[rɪdʊst]	at a lower price than usual; <i>a reduced price</i>
secondhand	[sɛkəndhænd]	already used by another person; not new; <i>a secondhand car</i>

PHRASES

“Anything else?”	used by a sales assistant to ask if there are any other things you would like to buy
“Just looking.”	used for telling a sales assistant that you do not need any help

EXAMPLES

Do you sell stamps?

Can I try this on?

I'd like something cheaper.

It's too expensive.

I'm afraid we don't have your size in stock.

society and politics

NOUNS

ambassador	[<u>æ</u> mbæ <u>s</u> ədər]	an important official person who lives in a foreign country and represents his or her own country there; <i>the American ambassador in Berlin</i>
army	[<u>ɑ</u> rmi]	a large group of soldiers who are trained to fight battles on land
asylum seeker	[ə <u>s</u> aɪ <u>l</u> əm sikər]	someone who asks the government of a foreign country if they can live there, because they are in danger in their own country
capitalism	[kæ <u>p</u> ɪ <u>t</u> ə <u>l</u> ɪzəm]	an economic and political system in which property, business, and industry are privately owned
capitalist	[kæ <u>p</u> ɪ <u>t</u> ə <u>l</u> ɪst]	someone who supports the ideas of capitalism

caste	[kæst]	one of the social classes into which people in a Hindu society are divided
ceasefire	[siːsfaɪər]	an agreement to stop fighting for a period of time; <i>declare a ceasefire</i>
citizen	[sɪtɪzən]	1 a person who legally belongs to a particular country 2 a person who lives in a town or a city
civilian	[sɪvɪljən]	a person who is not a member of the armed forces
civil war	[sɪvəl wɔː]	a war that is fought between different groups of people living in the same country
class	[klæs]	a group of people with the same economic and social position in a society
communism	[kɒmyənɪzəm]	an economic and political system in which property, business, and industry are owned by the state
communist	[kɒmyənɪst]	someone who supports the ideas

of communism

EXAMPLES

Prince Charlie's army marched on Edinburgh in 1745.

The number of asylum seekers entering the U.S. fell last month.

Ten civilians died in the attack.

community	[kəmyuːnɪti]	a group of people who are similar in some way, or have similar interests; <i>the Muslim community</i>
council	[kaʊnsəl]	a group of people who are chosen to control a particular area; <i>the local council</i>
country	[kʌntri]	an area of the world with its own government and people
culture	[kʌltʃər]	the way of life, the traditions, and beliefs of a particular group of people
democracy	[dɪmɒkrəsi]	a system of government in which people choose their leaders by voting for them in elections

dictator	[dɪk <u>t</u> ɪtər]	a ruler who uses force to keep power in a country
election	[ɪl <u>ɛ</u> kʃən]	a process in which people vote in order to choose a person who will hold an official position; <i>a presidential election</i>
embassy	[<u>ɛ</u> mbəsi]	1 a group of officials, headed by an ambassador, who represent their government in a foreign country 2 the building in which these people work
emperor	[<u>ɛ</u> mpərər]	a man who rules an empire
empire	[<u>ɛ</u> mpaɪər]	several separate nations that are all controlled by the ruler of one particular country
globalization	[gl <u>ɒ</u> bəlaɪz <u>ɪ</u> ʃən]	the idea that the world is developing a single economy as a result of modern technology and communications
government	[g <u>ʌ</u> vərnmənt]	the group of people who control and organize a country, a state, or a city

human rights [hyumən raɪts] the rights that all people in a society should have

immigrant [ɪmɪgrənt] a person who comes to live in a country from another country

EXAMPLES

The embassy has confirmed the report.

A police officer was guarding the embassy.

The country has a poor human rights record.

independence [ɪndɪpɛndəns] a situation in which one country is not controlled by another country

king [kɪŋ] a man from a royal family, who is the head of state of that country

kingdom [kɪŋdəm] a country that is ruled by a king or a queen

the middle class [ðə mɪdəl klæs] the people in a society who are well educated, and who have professional jobs, for example, teachers, doctors, and lawyers

monarchy [mɒnərki] a system in which a country has

		a king or a queen
MP	[ɛm pi]	short for “Member of Parliament:” in Britain, a person in the government who has been elected to represent the people from a particular area
nation	[neɪʃən]	an individual country, its people, and its social and political structures
nationality	[næʃənælɪti]	1 the state of being a legal citizen of a particular country; <i>Polish nationality</i> 2 a group of people who have the same race, culture, or language
parliament	[pɑrləmənt]	the group of people who make or change the laws of some countries
party	[pɑrti]	a political organization whose members have similar aims and beliefs; <i>the Republican Party</i>
peace	[pi:s]	a situation where there is not a war

politics	[pɒlɪtiks]	the activities and ideas that are concerned with government
population	[pɒpyələɪʃən]	all the people who live in a country or an area
president	[prezɪdənt]	the person who is in charge of a country that has no king or queen

EXAMPLES

We have several different nationalities in our team.

NATO forces were sent to Kosovo to keep the peace.

prime minister	[praɪm mɪnɪstər]	the leader of a government in some countries
queen	[kwɪn]	1 a woman from a royal family who rules a country 2 the wife of a king
refugee	[rɛfjuːdʒi]	a person who has been forced to leave their home or their country, because it is too dangerous for them there
republic	[rɪpʌblɪk]	a country with no king or queen, where the people choose their

		government
revolution	[rɛvəlʊʃən]	an attempt by a group of people to change their country's government by using force
ruler	[rʊlər]	the person who rules a country
slave	[slɛɪv]	a person who belongs to another person and who is forced to work for them without being paid
soldier	[sɔʊldʒər]	a member of an army
state	[steɪt]	<p>1 a country, especially when it is considered politically; <i>EU member states</i></p> <p>2 a smaller area that some large countries such as the United States are divided into; <i>the state of Michigan</i></p> <p>3 the government of a country; <i>a state-owned bank</i></p>
territory	[tɛrətɔːri]	all the land that a particular country owns
terrorism	[tɛrərɪzəm]	the use of violence to force a government to do something

terrorist	[tɛrərɪst]	a person who uses violence to achieve political aims
the upper class	[ðɪ ʌpər klæs]	the people in a society who have the highest position in society
volunteer	[vɒləntɪər]	someone who works without being paid
war	[wɔːr]	a period of fighting between countries or groups

EXAMPLES

In 1818, Argentina was at war with Spain.

the working class	[ðə wɜːkɪŋ klæs]	the people in a society who are less educated, and who have less money than other people
--------------------------	------------------	--

VERBS

assassinate	[əʃæsɪneɪt]	to murder someone for political reasons
break out		when war breaks out, it begins
conquer	[kɒŋkər]	to take complete control of the land of another country or

		group of people
elect	[ɪlɛkt]	to choose a person to do a particular job by voting for them; <i>elect a president</i>
govern	[gʌvərn]	to officially control and organize a country
invade	[ɪnveɪd]	to attack and enter a country
reign	[reɪn]	to rule a country as king or queen
volunteer	[vɒləntɪər]	to work without being paid
vote	[voʊt]	to show your choice officially in an election; <i>vote in an election</i>

ADJECTIVES

armed	[ɑrmd]	carrying a weapon, usually a gun; <i>armed forces</i>
capitalist	[kæpɪtəlɪst]	relating to or supporting capitalism
communist	[kɒmyənɪst]	relating to or supporting communism
democratic	[dɛməkrætɪk]	1 having or relating to a political system in which the

leaders are elected by the people they govern; *democratic elections*
2 based on the idea that everyone has equal rights and should be involved in making important decisions; *a democratic decision*

global [gloʊbəl] relating to the whole world; *the global economy*

international [ɪntərnæʃənəl] involving different countries

EXAMPLES

The president was assassinated, and the army took over.

Victoria reigned for over 60 years.

local [loʊkəl] in or relating to the area where you live

national [næʃənəl] 1 relating to the whole of a country or nation; *a national newspaper*
2 typical of the people or traditions of a particular country or nation; *a national pastime*

patriotic [peɪtrɪptɪk] feeling love and loyalty towards your country

public [pʌblɪk] 1 relating to all the people in a country or a community; *public opinion*
2 for everyone to use; *a public swimming pool*

social [səʊʃəl] relating to society

socialist [səʊʃəlɪst] relating to socialism

voluntary [vɒlɒntəri] voluntary work is done by people who are not paid

IDIOMS

the grass roots the ordinary people in a society, rather than the leaders

win by a landslide to win an election by a very large number of votes

sports

NOUN

sport [spɔːrt] a game or other activity that needs physical effort and skill

TYPES OF SPORTS

aerobics [ɛəroʊbɪks] a form of exercise that makes your heart and lungs stronger;
do aerobics

**American
football (BRIT)** *see* **football**

badminton [bædmɪntən] a game in which two or four players stand on either side of a high net and get points by hitting a small object (called a shuttlecock or birdie) across it using a racket; *play badminton*

baseball [beɪsbɔːl] a game in which two teams of nine players get points by hitting a ball with a bat and

		running around four bases in a large field; <i>play baseball</i>
basketball	[bɑːskɪtbɔːl, bæ-s-]	a game in which two teams of five players each try to throw a large ball through a round net hanging from a high metal ring; <i>play basketball</i>
boxing	[bɒksɪŋ]	a sport in which two people fight following special rules
cricket	[krɪkɪt]	a game played by two teams who try to score points by hitting a ball with a wooden bat; <i>play cricket</i>
darts	[dɑːrts]	a game in which you throw darts (= small pointed objects) at a round board that has numbers on it; <i>play darts</i>
football	[fʊtbɔːl]	1 a game in which two teams of eleven players try to get an oval (= egg-shaped) ball to their opponents' end of the field; <i>play football</i> (<i>In British English, use American football</i>) 2 (BRIT) see soccer

EXAMPLES

What's your favorite sport?

Terry was the captain of Chelsea Football Club.

golf	[gɒlf]	a game in which you use long sticks (called golf clubs) to hit a small, hard ball into a hole in the ground; <i>play golf</i>
gymnastics	[dʒɪmnæstɪks]	a sport that consists of physical exercises that develop your strength and your ability to move easily; <i>do gymnastics</i>
hockey	[hɒki]	a sport in which two teams of eleven players use long curved sticks to hit a small hard ball; <i>play hockey</i>
horseback riding	[hɔːrsbæk raɪdɪŋ]	the sport of riding on a horse; <i>go horseback riding (In British English, use horse-riding)</i>
horse racing	[hɔːrs reɪsɪŋ]	a sport in which riders (called jockeys) race against each other on horses
horse-riding		see horseback riding

(BRIT)

ice skating	[aɪs sketɪŋ]	the sport of moving around on ice wearing ice skates; <i>go ice skating</i>
jogging	[dʒɒɡɪŋ]	the sport of running slowly; <i>go jogging</i>
judo	[dʒʊdɒʊ]	a sport in which two people try to throw each other to the ground; <i>do judo</i>
karate	[kə'reɪtɪ]	a Japanese sport in which people fight using their hands, feet, and legs; <i>do karate</i>
rugby	[rʌɡbi]	a game in which two teams try to get a ball past a line at the end of the field; <i>play rugby</i>
skiing	[skɪɪŋ]	the sport of traveling over snow on skis; <i>go skiing</i>
snooker	[snʊkər]	a game that is played on a special table. Players use a long stick to hit a white ball so that it knocks colored balls into holes around the edge of the table; <i>play snooker (mainly BRIT)</i>

soccer	[spkər]	a game in which two teams of eleven players try to win points by kicking the ball into an area at their opponent's end of the field (<i>In British English, use football</i>)
squash	[skwɒʃ]	a game in which two players hit a small rubber ball against the walls of a court; <i>play squash</i>
swimming	[swɪmɪŋ]	the sport of moving through water using your arms and legs; <i>go swimming</i>
tennis	[tɛnɪs]	a game for two or four players, who use rackets (= special bats) to hit a ball across a net between them; <i>a game of tennis; play tennis</i>
volleyball	[vɒlibɔːl]	a game in which two teams hit a large ball over a high net with their arms or hands; <i>play volleyball</i>
windsurfing	[wɪndzɜːfɪŋ]	a sport in which you move across water on a long narrow

board with a sail on it; go
windsurfing

PEOPLE

athlete	[æθlit]	someone who is good at physical sports, exercise, or games, especially in competitions
captain	[kæptɪn]	the leader of a sports team
champion	[tʃæmpiən]	the winner of a sports competition or game; <i>the world champion</i>
coach	[kəʊtʃ]	someone who is in charge of teaching a person or a sports team
fan	[fæn]	someone who likes a particular sport, team, or player very much; <i>football fans</i>
opponent	[əpəʊnənt]	the person who is against you in a sports competition
player	[pleɪər]	a person who takes part in a sport or game
referee	[rɛfəri]	the person who makes sure that

players do not break the rules in a match

spectator [spɛkteɪtər]

someone who is watching a sports event

team [tiːm]

a group of people who play a sport against other groups of people

umpire [ʌmpaɪr]

someone who watches a game such as tennis or baseball to make sure that the players do not break the rules

EXAMPLES

She praised her opponent's ability.

She was a good golfer and tennis player.

The referee blew his whistle to end the game.

The umpire's decision is final.

winner [wɪnər]

the person who wins a prize, a race, or a competition

PLACES

boxing ring [bɒksɪŋ rɪŋ]

a square area with ropes around it, where boxing matches take

		place
court	[kɔːrt]	an area for playing a game such as tennis or basketball; <i>a tennis court</i>
golf course	[gɒlf kɔːrs]	an area of land where people play golf
gymnasium	[dʒɪmnæɪzɪəm]	a room or hall with equipment for doing physical exercise
ice rink	[aɪs rɪŋk]	an area of ice that people can skate on
pitch	[pɪtʃ]	an area of ground that is used for playing a game such as football; <i>a football pitch</i>
racetrack	[reɪstræk]	a track that is used for races
stadium	[steɪdɪəm]	a large sports field with rows of seats all around it; <i>a football stadium</i>
swimming pool	[swɪmɪŋ pul]	a place that has been built for people to swim in

EQUIPMENT AND CLOTHING

ball	[bɔːl]	a round object that you kick,
-------------	--------	-------------------------------

		throw, or hit in some sports and games
basket	[bɑːskɪt, bæ-s-]	the net that you throw the ball through in basketball
bat	[bæt]	a long piece of wood that is used for hitting the ball in games such as baseball or cricket; <i>a baseball/cricket bat</i>
golf club	[gɒlf klʌb]	a long, thin, metal stick that you use to hit the ball in golf
net	[nɛt]	<p>1 in tennis, and some other sports, the piece of material across the center of the court that the ball has to go over</p> <p>2 in soccer, the material that is attached to the back of the goal</p> <p>3 in basketball, the loose material that hangs from the ring</p>
racket	[rækɪt]	a thing with a long handle and a round part with strings stretched across it, used for hitting the ball in some games; <i>a tennis/badminton racket</i>

skis [skɪz] long, flat, narrow pieces of wood, metal, or plastic that you fasten to your boots so that you can move easily over snow

COMPETITIONS

championship [tʃæmpɪənʃɪp] a competition to find the best player or team in a particular sport or game

competition [kɒmpɪtɪʃən] an event in which people try to show that they are best at an activity

final [faɪnəl] the last game or race in a series, that decides who is the winner;
play in the final

foul [faʊl] an action that breaks the rules of a particular sport

game [geɪm] **1** an activity or a sport in which you try to win; *a game of tennis*
2 one particular occasion when you play a game

goal [ɡoʊl] **1** the place, in games such as soccer, where the players try to

put the ball in order to win a point for their team
2 a point that is scored when the ball goes into the goal in games such as soccer

halftime	[hæftaɪm]	the short period between the two parts of a game when the players can rest
match	[mætʃ]	a sports game between two people or teams; <i>a tennis match</i>
medal	[mɛdəl]	a piece of metal that is give to the person who wins a race or competition; <i>a gold/silver/bronze medal</i>

EXAMPLES

She's competing in the women's basketball championship this month.

Football is such a great game.

Liverpool is in the lead by 2 goals to 1.

Washington led 44-32 at halftime.

point	[pɔɪnt]	a mark that you win in a game or a sport
race	[reɪs]	a competition to see who is the

fastest

score	[skɔːr]	the result of a game
tie	[taɪ]	an occasion when both teams have the same number of points at the end of a game
tournament	[tuəˈnəmənt, tʒr-]	a sports competition in which each player who wins a game plays another game, until just one person or team (the winner) remains
the World Cup	[ðə wɜːld kʌp]	an international soccer tournament that is held every four years in a different country

VERBS

beat	[biːt]	to defeat someone in a race or competition
catch	[kætʃ]	to take and hold a ball that is moving through the air
defend	[dɪfɛnd]	to try to stop the other team from getting points
draw	[drɔː]	to finish a game with the same number of points as the other

		player or team
hit	[hɪt]	to bat a ball with a lot of force
jump	[dʒʌmp]	to bend your knees, push against the ground with your feet, and move quickly upwards into the air
kick	[kɪk]	to hit a ball with your foot
lose	[luːz]	to not win a game
miss	[mɪs]	to not manage to hit or catch something
practice	[præktɪs]	to do a sport regularly in order to do it better (<i>In British English, use pratise</i>)
practise (BRIT)		see practice
run	[rʌn]	to move very quickly on your legs

EXAMPLES

What's the score?

Switzerland beat the United States two-one.

England drew with Ireland in the first game.

save	[s <u>ɛ</u> v]	to stop the ball from going into the goal in a sports game; <i>save a goal</i>
score	[sk <u>ɔ</u> r]	to get a goal or a point in a sports competition
serve	[s <u>ɜ</u> rv]	to hit the ball to start part of a game in a tennis match
ski	[sk <u>i</u>]	to move over snow or water on skis
swim	[sw <u>ɪ</u> m]	to move through water by making movements with your arms and legs
throw	[θr <u>o</u>]	to use your hand to make a ball move through the air
tie	[t <u>aɪ</u>]	if two teams tie, they have the same number of points at the end of a game
train	[tr <u>eɪ</u> n]	to prepare for a sports competition; <i>train for a match</i>
win	[w <u>ɪ</u> n]	to do better than everyone else in a race or a game; <i>win a game</i>

ADJECTIVES

in the lead [ɪn ðə liːd] in front of all the other people
in a race

professional [prəˈfɛʃənəl] doing a particular activity as a
job rather than just for pleasure

EXAMPLES

Can you swim?

Ben Johnson in the lead. Can he hang on? Yes, he's done it!

telephone, post, and communications

NOUNS

address	[ədrɛs]	the number of the building, the name of the street, and the town where you live or work; <i>name and address; mailing address</i>
area code	[ɛəriə koud]	the series of numbers that you have to dial before a phone number if you are making a call from a different area (<i>In British English, use dialling code</i>)
Blackberry™	[blækberi]	a very small device that you can use for receiving and sending e-mails and making phone calls
call	[kɔl]	an occasion when you phone someone; <i>a phone call</i>
cellphone	[sɛlfoun]	a phone that you can carry with you and use wherever you are

(In British English, use **mobile phone**)

delivery	[dɪlɪvəri]	an occasion when someone brings letters, packages, or other goods to a particular place; <i>mail delivery</i>
dialling code (BRIT)		see area code
directory enquiries (BRIT)		see information
envelope	[ɛnvəloʊp, ɪn-]	the paper cover in which you put a letter before you send it to someone; <i>a brown envelope; a self-addressed envelope</i>
extension	[ɪkstɛnʃən]	a phone that connects to the main phone line in a building
fax	[fæks]	a copy of a document that you send or receive using a fax machine; <i>send/receive a fax</i>
fax machine	[fæks məʃɪn]	a special machine that you use to send and receive documents electronically

EXAMPLES

What is your address?

Please allow 28 days for delivery of your order.

Can I have extension forty-six, please?

form	[fɔːrm]	a piece of paper with questions on it and spaces where you should write the answers; <i>fill in a form</i>
information	[ɪnfəˈmeɪʃən]	a service that you can call to find out someone's phone number (<i>In British English, use directory enquiries</i>)
international call	[ɪntəˈnæʃənəl kɔːl]	a phone call made between different countries; <i>make an international call</i>
landline	[lændlaɪn]	a phone connection that uses wires, in contrast to a cellphone
letter	[ˈlɛtər]	a message that you write or type on paper and send to someone; <i>open a letter; write/send a letter</i>
letterbox (BRIT)		see mailbox

line	[laɪn]	a phone connection or wire
local call	[ləʊkəl kɔːl]	a phone call to a place that is near; <i>make a local call</i>
mail	[meɪl]	1 the letters and packages that you receive (<i>In British English, use post</i>) 2 the e-mail that you receive; a <i>mail server</i>
mailbox	[meɪlbɒks]	a hole in a door through which mail is delivered, or a box in which mail is delivered; <i>put something through the mailbox (In British English, use letterbox or post box)</i>
mailman	[meɪlmæn]	a man who collects and delivers
(PL)mailmen	[meɪlmɛn]	letters and packages (<i>In British English, use postman</i>)
mailwoman	[meɪlwʊmən]	a woman who collects and
(PL)mailwomen	[meɪlwɪmɪn]	delivers letters and packages (<i>In British English, use postwoman</i>)
message	[ˈmɛsɪdʒ]	a piece of information that you send or give to someone; a <i>phone message; a voice message;</i>

*send/receive a message; leave/take
a message*

EXAMPLES

I'll call you later on your landline.

I received a letter from a friend.

Suddenly the telephone line went dead.

There has been no mail in three weeks.

She isn't here yet. Do you want to leave a message?

mobile	[m <u>oʊ</u> bəl]	same as mobile phone
mobile phone (<i>mainly BRIT</i>)		see cellphone
operator	[<u>ɒ</u> pəreɪtər]	a person who connects phone calls in a place such as an office or a hotel
package	[pækɪdʒ]	something that is wrapped in paper so that it can be sent through the mail
parcel	[pɑːrʃəl]	same as package
phone	[f <u>oʊ</u> n]	a piece of equipment that you use to talk to someone else in another place; <i>answer the phone; a pay phone; Can I use the phone?</i>

phone number	[fəʊn nʌmbər]	the number of a particular phone, that you use when you make a call to it
post (BRIT)		see mail
postage	[pəʊstɪdʒ]	the money that you pay for sending post
post box (BRIT)		see mailbox
postcard	[pəʊstkɑːd]	a thin card, often with a picture on one side, that you can write on and mail to someone without using an envelope; <i>send someone a postcard</i>
postcode (BRIT)		see zip code
postman		see mailman
post office	[pəʊst ɔːfɪs]	a building where you can buy stamps and post letters
postwoman		see mailwoman
receiver	[rɪsɪvər]	the part of a phone that you hold near to your ear and speak into; <i>pick up/lift the receiver</i>

reply [rɪplai] something that you say or write
as an answer

ringtone [rɪŋtoun] the sound that your cellphone
makes when someone calls you

EXAMPLES

Two minutes later the phone rang.

All prices include postage.

She picked up the receiver and started to dial.

I dialed her number, but there was no reply.

S&H [ɛs ənd eɪtʃ] short for “shipping and
handling:” the cost of wrapping
an item and sending it in the
mail

signature [sɪgnətʃər, -
tʃʊər] your name, written in your own
special way

SIM card [sɪm kɑrd] a small piece of electronic
equipment in a cellphone that
connects it to a particular phone
network

stamp [stæmp] a small piece of paper that you
stick on an envelope before you
mail it

telephone	[tɛlɪfoun]	same as phone
text message	[tɛkst mɛsɪdʒ]	a message that you send using a cellphone; <i>send/receive a text message</i>
tourist information office	[tʊərɪst ɪnfərmeɪʃən ɔfɪs]	an office that gives information about the local area
voicemail	[vɔɪsmel]	an electronic system that records spoken messages; <i>a voicemail message</i>
wrapping paper	[ræpɪŋ peɪpər]	special paper that you use for wrapping presents
writing paper	[raɪtɪŋ peɪpər]	paper for writing letters on
zip code	[zɪp kɔd]	a series of numbers and letters at the end of an address (<i>In British English, use postcode</i>)

VERBS

answer	[ænsər]	to pick up the phone when it rings
call	[kɔl]	to telephone someone
call someone		to phone someone in return for

back

a call they made to you

EXAMPLES

Price \$12.95 plus \$1.95 S&H.

They cost \$24.95 including S&H.

She put a stamp on the corner of the envelope.

She didn't answer the phone.

Would you call me as soon as you find out?

deliver	[dɪlɪvər]	to take something to a particular place
dial	[daɪəl]	to press the buttons on a phone in order to call someone; <i>dial a number</i>
hang up		to end a phone call
hold the line		to wait for a short time when you are making a phone call
mail	[meɪl]	to send a letter or a package somewhere in the mail (<i>In British English, use post</i>)
phone	[fəʊn]	to contact someone and speak to them on the phone; <i>Did anybody phone?; I phoned the police.</i>

post (*BRIT*)

see **mail**

reply [rɪplaɪ]

to write an answer to something that someone writes to you

send [sɛnd]

to make a message or a package go to someone

sign [saɪn]

to write your name on a document; *sign your name*; *sign a letter*

text [tɛkst]

to send someone a text message on a cellphone

write [raɪt]

to give someone information, ask them something or express your feelings in a letter or an e-mail; *write a letter/an e-mail*

EXAMPLES

Only 90% of first-class mail is delivered on time.

Don't hang up on me!

Could you hold the line, please?

I mailed a letter to Stanley.

I'm mailing you a check.

He never replies to my letters.

Hannah sent me a letter last week.

Mary texted me when she got home.

She wrote to her aunt asking for help.

ADJECTIVES

busy	[bɪzi]	if a phone line is busy, it is already being used by someone else; <i>The line is busy.</i> (In British English, use engaged)
dead	[dɛd]	if a phone line is dead it is no longer working
engaged (BRIT)		see busy
first-class	[fɜrst klæs]	used for describing the fastest and most expensive way of sending letters; <i>a first-class letter</i>
second-class	[sekənd klæs]	used for describing the slower and cheaper way of sending letters; <i>a second-class stamp</i>

PHRASES

best wishes		used at the end of a letter or e-mail, before your name, to someone you know who is not a very close friend
love from		used at the end of a letter or e-

mail, before your name, to a friend or relative

sincerely
yours

used at the end of a formal letter, before your name, when you have addressed it to someone by their name (*In British English, use yours sincerely*)

yours
faithfully

used at the end of a formal letter, before your name, when you start the letter with the words “Dear Sir” or “Dear Madam”

yours
sincerely
(BRIT)

see **sincerely yours**

EXAMPLES

We tried to call you back but you were busy.

I answered the phone and the line went dead.

television and radio

NOUNS

ad	[æd]	a short film on television or short article on the radio that tells you about something such as a product or an event (<i>In British English, use advert</i>)
advert (<i>BRIT</i>)		see ad
advert s (<i>BRIT</i>)		see commercial break
aerial (<i>BRIT</i>)		see antenna
antenna	[æntɛnə]	a piece of equipment that receives television or radio signals (<i>In British English, use aerial</i>)
(<small>PL</small>) antennae	[æntɛni]	
antennas		
cable television	[keɪbəl tɛlɪvɪʒən]	a television system in which signals travel along wires
cartoon	[kɑːtʊn]	a film that uses drawings instead of real people or objects
celebrity	[sɪlɛbrɪti]	someone who is famous; a <i>TV celebrity</i> ; a <i>celebrity guest</i>

channel	[tʃænəl]	a television station; <i>change channels; What channel is it on?</i>
chat show (BRIT)		see talk show
clip	[klɪp]	a short piece of a film that is shown separately; <i>a video clip</i>
commercial break	[kəmɜːrʃəl breɪk]	a short interruption in a television or radio program when ads are shown (<i>In British English, use adverts</i>)
DJ	[dʒi dʒeɪ]	short for “disc jockey:” someone whose job is to play music and talk on the radio; <i>a radio DJ</i>
DVD	[dʒi vi di]	short for “digital video disk:” a disk on which a movie or music is recorded; <i>a DVD player</i>

EXAMPLES

Have you seen that new ad for Pepsi?

We don't have cable TV.

We watched children's cartoons on TV.

There is a huge number of television channels in America.

They showed a film clip of the Apollo moon landing.

documentary	[dɒkʏə- mɛntəri, -tri]	a television program that provides information about a particular subject; <i>a wildlife documentary</i>
game show	[geɪm ʃou]	a television program in which people compete to win prizes; <i>a television game show</i>
host	[həʊst]	someone who introduces the different parts of a television or radio program; <i>a TV/radio host; a sports host</i>
media	[mi:diə]	television, radio, newspapers, and magazines
news	[nju:z]	information about recent events that is reported on the radio or television; <i>watch/listen to the news</i>
prime time	[praɪm taɪm]	the time when most people are watching television; <i>prime-time TV</i>
program	[prəʊgræm, - græm]	a television or radio show; <i>a television/radio program</i>
quiz show	[kwɪz ʃou]	a television or radio program in

radio	[reɪdiəʊ]	which people compete in a quiz a piece of equipment that you use in order to listen to radio programs; <i>listen to the radio; on the radio; FM/digital radio</i>
reality TV	[riælɪti tɪ vɪ]	a type of television that aims to show how ordinary people behave in everyday life
remote control	[rɪməʊt kəntrəʊl]	the device that you use to control a television or video recorder from a distance
satellite	[sætəlaɪt]	a piece of electronic equipment that is sent into space in order to receive and send back information; <i>satellite television/radio; a satellite dish</i>

EXAMPLES

Did you see that documentary on TV last night?

A lot of people in the media have asked me that question.

Here are some of the top stories in the news.

He wants to watch his favorite TV program.

She reached for the remote control to turn on the news.

screen	[skrɪn]	a flat surface on a television, where you see pictures or words; <i>a TV screen</i>
series (PL) series	[sɪəriːz]	a set of radio or television programs
set	[sɛt]	a piece of equipment that receives television or radio signals; <i>a TV set</i>
sitcom	[sɪtkɒm]	short for “situation comedy:” a series in which a set of characters is involved in various amusing situations; <i>a TV sitcom</i>
soap opera	[sɒp ɒpərə, ɒprə]	a television drama serial about the daily lives of a group of people
station	[steɪʃən]	a company that broadcasts programs on radio or television; <i>a local radio station</i>
subtitles	[sʌbtʌɪtəlz]	the translation of the words of a foreign film or television program that is shown at the bottom of the picture
talk show	[tɔk ʃəʊ]	a television or radio show in

which an interviewer talks to guests in a friendly informal way about different topics
(*In British English, use **chat show***)

television	[tɛlɪvɪʒən, -vɪʒ-]	1 a piece of electrical equipment with a screen on which you watch moving pictures with sound; <i>We bought a new television.</i> 2 the moving pictures and sounds that you watch and listen to on a television; <i>What's on television tonight?</i>
TV	[ti vi]	[INFORMAL] television; <i>watch TV</i>
video	[vɪdiou]	a film that you can watch at home
volume	[vɒlyum]	how loud or quiet the sound is on a television or radio

EXAMPLES

The long-running TV series is filmed in Chicago.
The dialogue is in Spanish, with English subtitles.
I prefer going to the movies to watching television.
You can rent a video for \$3 and watch it at home.

He turned the volume up on the radio.

wavelength [weɪvlɛŋθ] the size of a radio wave that a particular radio station uses to broadcast its programs

VERBS

broadcast [brɔːdkæst] to send out a program so that it can be heard on the radio or seen on television

fast-forward [fæst fɔːwɜːrd] to move a video tape forwards quickly

record [rɪkɔːrd] to put sounds or images onto a CD, DVD, tape, or video so that they can be heard or seen again later

rewind [riːwaɪnd] to wind a movie back to the beginning

switch something off to stop electrical equipment from working by operating a switch; *switch off the radio/television*

switch to make electrical equipment

something on		start working by operating a switch; <i>switch on the radio/television</i>
tune	[t <u>u</u> n]	to adjust a radio or television so that it receives a particular station or program
tune in		to listen to a radio program or watch a television program
turn something off		to make a piece of electrical equipment stop working; <i>turn off the radio/television</i>
turn something on		to make a piece of electrical equipment start working; <i>turn on the radio/television</i>
watch	[w <u>a</u> tʃ]	to look at a television for a period of time

EXAMPLES

She found the station's wavelength on her radio.

The concert will be broadcast live on television and radio.

Can you record the movie for me?

The radio was tuned to NPR.

They tuned in to watch the game.

I stayed up late to watch the film.

ADJECTIVES

animated	[ænimɪˈeɪtɪd]	an animated film is one in which puppets or drawings appear to move
digital	[dɪdʒɪtəl]	using information in the form of thousands of very small signals
on-demand	[ɒn dɪmænd]	available whenever needed

ADVERBS

live	[laɪv]	used for describing a television or radio program that you watch at the same time that it happens; <i>watch something live</i>
on the air	[ɒn ði ɛər]	on radio or television

IDIOMS

channel surfing		a way of watching television in which you keep changing from one channel to another using a remote control
couch potato		a person who spends a lot of time sitting watching television

EXAMPLES

Most people now have digital television.

The new video-on-demand service will be available only to those with broadband internet connections.

The show went on the air live at 8 o'clock.

theater and cinema

NOUNS

actor	[æktər]	someone whose job is acting in plays or movies; <i>a famous actor</i>
actress	[æktrɪs]	a woman whose job is acting in plays or movies
audience	[ɔːdiəns]	all the people who are watching or listening to a performance or a movie; <i>a movie audience</i>
audition	[ɔːdɪʃən]	a short performance that an actor gives so that someone can decide if they are good enough to be in a play or a movie
ballet	[bæleɪ]	a performance of a type of dancing that tells a story; <i>go to the ballet</i>
Bollywood	[bɒliwʊd]	the Indian film industry; <i>a Bollywood movie; a Bollywood actor</i>
box office	[bɒks ɔfɪs]	1 the place in a theater or

		concert hall where the tickets are sold
		2 used to refer to the success of a movie or play in terms of the number of people who go to see it
cast	[kæst]	all the people who act in a play or a movie
character	[kærɪktər]	one of the people in a story
cinema (BRIT)		see movie theater
circus	[sɜrkəs]	a group of people and animals that travels around to different places and performs shows in a big tent
comedian	[kəmiːdiən]	a person whose job is to make people laugh
comedy	[kɒmədi]	a play or movie that is intended to make people laugh

EXAMPLES

She's a really good actress.

They are holding final auditions for presenters.

They collected their tickets at the box office.

The film was a huge success at the box office.

He plays the main character in the movie.

I always wanted to work as a clown in a circus.

The movie is a romantic comedy.

costume	[kɒstʊm]	a set of clothes that someone wears in a performance; <i>the costumes and scenery</i>
curtain	[kɜrtən]	the large piece of material that hangs at the front of the stage in a theater; <i>the curtain rises/falls</i>
director	[dɪrɛktər, daɪ-]	the person who tells actors what to do; <i>a movie director; a theater director</i>
drama	[drɑmə, dræmə]	a serious play or movie
epic	[ɛpɪk]	a long movie about important events
film (BRIT)		see movie
film producer	[fɪlm prədusər]	a person whose job is to produce plays or movies; <i>a film producer</i>
film star (BRIT)		see movie star

full house	[fʊl haʊs]	an occasion when there are no empty seats in a theater; <i>playing to a full house</i>
Hollywood	[hɒliwʊd]	the American film industry; <i>Hollywood movie stars; a Hollywood movie</i>
horror movie	[hɒrər muvi, hɒr-]	a type of movie that is very frightening
intermission	[ɪntərmiʃən]	a short break between two parts of a movie, concert, or show; <i>during the intermission (In British English, use interval)</i>
interval (BRIT)		see intermission
makeup	[meɪkʌp]	the creams and powders that actors put on their faces to change their appearance; <i>wear/apply makeup; a makeup artist; costumes and makeup</i>
matinee	[mætəneɪ]	a performance of a play or a showing of a movie in the afternoon; <i>a matinee performance</i>
movie	[muvi]	a story that is told using moving pictures on the television or at a

movie theater; *to make/direct a movie; to watch a movie (In British English, use **film**)*

EXAMPLES

I'm going to see a movie tonight.

I rarely went to the movies.

the movies	[ðə mʊvɪz]	same as movie theater ; <i>go to the movies</i>
movie star	[mʊvi stɑː]	a famous actor or actress who appears in movies (<i>In British English, use film star</i>)
movie theater	[mʊvi θiətər]	a building where people go to watch movies (<i>In British English, use cinema</i>)
multiplex	[mʌltɪplɛks]	a movie theater with several screens; cinema sɪnɪmə] <i>a multiplex cinema</i>
musical	[myʊzɪkəl]	a play or a movie that uses singing and dancing in the story; <i>a Broadway musical</i>

opera	[<u>ɒ</u> pərə, <u>ɒ</u> prə]	a play with music in which all the words are sung; <i>an opera singer; an opera house</i>
Oscar™	[<u>ɒ</u> skər]	a prize given to actors, directors, and other people in the film industry; <i>get an Oscar; She has three Oscars.</i>
part	[p <u>ɑː</u> t]	one character's words and actions in a play or movie
performance	[pərf <u>ɔː</u> məns]	the activity of entertaining an audience by singing, dancing, or acting; <i>a concert performance</i>
play	[ple <u>ɪ</u>]	a piece of writing performed in a theater, on the radio, or on television
playwright	[ple <u>ɪ</u> raɪt]	a person who writes plays
plot	[pl <u>ɒ</u> t]	a series of events that make up the story of a movie
production	[prɒd <u>ʌ</u> kʃən]	a play or other show that is performed in a theater; <i>a theater/stage production; a film production</i>
program	[pr <u>oʊ</u> græm, -]	a small book or sheet of paper

	grəm]	that tells you about a play or concert
review	[rɪvyu]	a report that gives an opinion about something such as a play or a movie

EXAMPLES

He played the part of Hamlet.

They were giving a performance of Bizet's "Carmen."

Hamlet is my favorite play.

Tonight our class is going to see a production of "Othello."

The show received excellent reviews in all the papers.

romance	[roumæns, roumæns]	a movie or a play about a romantic relationship
rom-com	[rɒmkɒm]	short for "romantic comedy:" a humorous film in which the main story is about a romantic relationship
scene	[si:n]	a part of a play or a movie that happens in the same place; <i>film/shoot a scene; a love scene</i>
science fiction	[saɪəns fɪkʃən]	stories and movies about events that take place in the future or

		in other parts of the universe; <i>a science fiction movie</i>
screen	[skrɪn]	the flat area on the wall of a movie theater, where you see the movie; <i>the movie screen</i>
script	[skɪpt]	the written words that actors speak in a play or a movie
seat	[si:t]	something that you can sit on in a theater or concert hall
sequel	[si:kwəl]	a movie that continues the story of an earlier movie
set	[sɛt]	the place where a movie is made or the scenery that is on the stage when a play is being performed; <i>a movie set</i>
show	[ʃou]	a performance in a theater; <i>a comedy show</i>
soundtrack	[saʊndtræk]	the music that is played during a movie; <i>a movie soundtrack</i>
spotlight	[spɒtlaɪt]	a powerful light in a theater that can be directed so that it lights up a small area

stage	[steɪdʒ]	the area in a theater where people perform; <i>come on stage; a concert stage; on stage and screen; a stage play</i>
star	[stɑr]	a famous actor or actress; <i>a movie star</i>

EXAMPLES

This is the opening scene of "Hamlet."

Watching a movie on television is not the same as seeing it on the big screen.

We had front-row seats at the concert.

The place looked like the set of a James Bond movie.

How about going to see a show tomorrow?

subtitles	[sʌbtartɪz]	the translation of the words of a foreign film that are shown at the bottom of the picture
theater	[θiətər]	a place where you go to see plays, movies, or shows; <i>go to the theater</i>
thriller	[θrɪlər]	an exciting movie or play about a crime
ticket	[tɪkɪt]	a small piece of paper that shows that you have paid to go

to see a movie or a play;
theater/movie tickets

tragedy [trædʒɪdi] a type of serious play that usually ends with the death of the main character

trailer [treɪlər] a set of short extracts from a movie that are shown to advertise it

VERBS

act [ækt] to have a part in a play or a movie

book [bʊk] to buy tickets for a movie or show that you will go to later

clap [klæp] to hit your hands together to show that you like something

dance [dæns] to move your body to music

play [pleɪ] to perform the part of a particular character in a play or movie

shoot [ʃʊt] to make a movie

sing [sɪŋ] to make music with your voice

star

[stɑr]

1 to have a famous actor or actress in one of the most important parts in a play or movie

2 to have one of the most important parts in a play or movie

EXAMPLES

The dialogue is in Spanish, with English subtitles.

He acted in many movies, including “Reds.”

You can book tickets for the movie theater over the phone.

He played Mr. Hyde in the movie.

He’d love to shoot his movie in Cuba.

The movie stars Brad Pitt.

She stars in the Broadway play.

watch

[wɒtʃ]

to look at someone or something for a period of time; *watch a movie/play*

ADJECTIVES

black-and-white

[blæk ənd waɪt] showing everything in black, white, and gray; *old black-and-white movie footage*

classic	[klæ̩sɪk]	of very good quality, and popular for a long time; <i>a classic movie</i>
dubbed	[dʌbd]	having a different soundtrack added with actors speaking in a different language; <i>cartoons dubbed in Chinese</i>
low-budget	[ləʊ bʌdʒɪt]	made spending very little money; <i>a low-budget movie</i>
sold out	[səʊld aʊt]	used to describe a performance for which all the tickets have been sold
subtitled	[sʌbtartɪd]	with a translation of the words shown at the bottom of the screen; <i>a subtitled movie</i>

THINGS YOU CAN SHOUT

bravo!	[brɑvəʊ]	an audience shouts “bravo!” to show how much they have enjoyed a performance
encore!	[ɒŋkɔr, -kɔr]	an audience shouts “encore!” at the end of a concert to ask for a short extra performance

IDIOMS

**bring the
house down**

to make everyone laugh or cheer
at a performance in the theater

**keep you on
the edge
of your seat**

to make you give your full
attention to something

steal the show

to attract more attention and
praise than other people

EXAMPLES

The movie kept everyone on the edge of their seats.

time

NOUNS

GENERAL

time	[t <u>a</u> ɪm]	1 something that we measure in minutes, hours, days, and years; <i>in a week's time; Time passed.</i> 2 used when you are talking about a particular point in the day, that you describe in hours and minutes
past	[p <u>æ</u> st]	the time before the present, and the things that happened then; <i>in the past</i>
present	[pr <u>ɛ</u> z ^ə nt]	the period of time that is happening now; <i>live in the present</i>
future	[fju:t <u>ʃ</u> ər]	the time that will come after now; <i>in the future</i>

HOURS, SECONDS, AND MINUTES

half an hour	[hæf ən <u>auər</u>]	a period of thirty minutes
hour	[<u>auər</u>]	a period of sixty minutes
minute	[mɪnɪt]	a unit for measuring time. There are sixty seconds in one minute, and there are sixty minutes in one hour.
moment	[m <u>ou</u> mənt]	a very short period of time; <i>a few moments later</i>
quarter of an hour	[kwɔːrtər əv ən <u>auər</u>]	a period of fifteen minutes
second	[sɛkənd]	a measurement of time. There are sixty seconds in one minute.

EXAMPLES

I've known Mr. Martin for a long time.

What time is it?

Do you know what time it is?

He was making plans for the future.

I only slept about half an hour last night.

They waited for about two hours.

The pizza will take twenty minutes to cook.

In a moment he was gone.

For a few seconds nobody spoke.

TIMES OF THE DAY

dawn	[dɔːn]	the time when the sky becomes light in the morning; <i>Dawn was breaking.</i>
sunrise	[sʌnraɪz]	the time in the morning when the sun first appears in the sky; <i>at sunrise</i>
morning	[mɔːrnɪŋ]	the part of each day between the time that people usually wake up and noon; <i>tomorrow morning; in the morning; on Sunday morning</i>
noon	[nuːn]	twelve o'clock in the middle of the day; <i>at noon</i>
midday	[mɪddeɪ]	same as noon
afternoon	[æftərnʌn]	the part of each day that begins at lunchtime and ends at about six o'clock; <i>in the afternoon; yesterday afternoon</i>
evening	[iːvnɪŋ]	the part of each day between the end of the afternoon and midnight; <i>yesterday evening; in the evening</i>

sunset	[sʌnset]	the time in the evening when the sun goes down; <i>at sunset</i>
dusk	[dʌsk]	the time just before night when it is not completely dark; <i>at dusk</i>
night	[naɪt]	1 the time when it is dark outside, and most people sleep; <i>during the night</i> 2 the period of time between the end of the afternoon and the time that you go to bed; <i>last night; ten o'clock at night</i>
midnight	[mɪdnait]	twelve o'clock in the middle of the night; <i>at midnight</i>

DAYS AND WEEKS

day	[deɪ]	a period of twenty-four hours from one midnight to the next midnight; <i>every day</i>
------------	-------	--

EXAMPLES

Nancy woke at dawn.

He stayed in his room all afternoon.

What day is it?

date	[deɪt]	a particular day and month or a particular year
fortnight	[fɔːtnaɪt]	a period of two weeks
week	[wi:k]	a period of seven days; <i>last week</i>
weekday	[wi:kdeɪ]	any of the days of the week except Saturday and Sunday
weekend	[wi:kɛnd]	Saturday and Sunday; <i>on the weekend</i>

DAYS OF THE WEEK

Monday	[mʌndeɪ, -di]	the day after Sunday and before Tuesday; <i>a week from Monday</i>
Tuesday	[tuzdeɪ, -di]	the day after Monday and before Wednesday; <i>next Tuesday</i>
Wednesday	[wɛnzdeɪ, -di]	the day after Tuesday and before Thursday; <i>on Wednesday</i>
Thursday	[θɜːzdeɪ, -di]	the day after Wednesday and before Friday; <i>every Thursday morning</i>
Friday	[fraɪdeɪ, -di]	the day after Thursday and before Saturday; <i>Friday, November 6</i>

Saturday [sætərdeɪ, -di] the day after Friday and before Sunday; *every Saturday*

Sunday [sʌndeɪ, -di] the day after Saturday and before Monday; *on Sunday*

MONTHS

month [mʌnθ] one of the twelve parts that a year is divided into

January [dʒænyuəri] the first month of the year; *on January*

February [febyuəri, febru-] the second month of the year

EXAMPLES

What's the date today?

What is he doing here on a weekday?

I had dinner with Tim last weekend.

We go on vacation next month.

We always have snow in January.

March [mɑːrtʃ] the third month of the year

April [eɪprɪl] the fourth month of the year

May [meɪ] the fifth month of the year

June	[dʒuːn]	the sixth month of the year
July	[dʒʊləɪ]	the seventh month of the year
August	[ɔːgəst]	the eighth month of the year
September	[septɛmbər]	the ninth month of the year
October	[ɒktəʊbər]	the tenth month of the year
November	[nəʊvɛmbər]	the eleventh month of the year
December	[dɪsɛmbər]	the twelfth and last month of the year

SEASONS

autumn (*BRIT*)

see **fall**

fall

[fɔːl]

the season between summer and winter, when the weather becomes cooler and the leaves fall off the trees; *in the fall*; *last/next fall*; *fall leaves* (*In British English, use **autumn***)

season

[siːzən]

a part of the year that has its own typical weather conditions; *the rainy season*

spring

[sprɪŋ]

the season between winter and summer when the weather

becomes warmer and plants start to grow again

summer [sʌmər] the season between spring and fall, when the weather is usually warm or hot; *a summer's day*

winter [wɪntər] the season between fall and spring, when the weather is usually cold

YEARS

century [sɛntʃəri] one hundred years; *in the 21st century*

decade [dɛkeɪd] a period of ten years

EXAMPLES

She was born on September 6th, 1970.

Summer is my favorite season.

They are getting married next spring.

The plant flowers in late summer.

leap year [li:p yɪər] a year, happening every four years, that has 366 days including February 29 as an extra day

year	[yɪər]	<p>1 a period of twelve months, beginning on the first of January and ending on the thirty-first of December; <i>next/last year; a calendar year</i></p> <p>2 any period of twelve months; <i>three times a year; the academic year</i></p>
-------------	--------	---

MEASURING TIME

alarm clock	[ə'lɑːrm klɒk]	a clock that makes a noise so that you wake up at a particular time; <i>set the alarm clock</i>
calendar	[kælɪndər]	a list of days, weeks, and months for a particular year
clock	[klɒk]	a piece of equipment that shows you what time it is
watch	[wɒtʃ]	a small clock that you usually wear on your wrist

ADJECTIVES

annual	[ænyuəl]	happening once every year; <i>an annual meeting</i>
---------------	----------	---

daily	[d <u>e</u> ɪli]	appearing or happening every day; <i>a daily newspaper; a daily routine</i>
early	[ɜ <u>r</u> li]	before the usual time; <i>an early start</i>
following	[fɒl <u>l</u> oʊɪŋ]	used for describing the day, week, or year after the one you have just mentioned; <i>the following morning</i>
last	[l <u>æ</u> st]	the most recent; <i>last July</i>
late	[l <u>e</u> ɪt]	after the time that something should start or happen

EXAMPLES

He didn't come home last night.

The train was 40 minutes late.

monthly	[m <u>ʌ</u> nθli]	happening every month; <i>monthly rent</i>
next	[nɛk <u>st</u>]	used for talking about the first day, week, or year that comes after this one or the previous one; <i>the next day</i>

weekly [wɪkli] happening once a week or every week; *a weekly meeting*

ADVERBS

ago [əɡoʊ] in the past; before now; *two days ago; a while ago*

at the moment [æt ðə moʊmənt] now

early [ɜrli] before the usual time; *get up/arrive early*

immediately [imidiətli] happening without any delay

late [let] after the time that something should start or happen

later [letər] used for talking about a time that is after the one that you have been talking about; *two days later*

now [naʊ] used for talking about the present time

nowadays [naʊədəɪz] now generally, and not in the past

once [wʌns] happening one time only

on time [ɒn taɪm] arriving at the expected time,
and not late; *The train arrived on
time.*

soon [suːn] after a short time

EXAMPLES

The magazine is published monthly.

She's busy at the moment.

"Call the police immediately!" she shouted.

It started forty minutes late.

I must go now.

Children watch a lot of TV nowadays.

I met Miquela once, at a party.

I'll call you soon.

today [tədeɪ] used when you are talking about
the actual day on which you are
speaking or writing

tomorrow [təməroʊ] the day after today

twice [twɑɪs] two times; *twice a week*

yesterday [yɛstərdeɪ, -di] used for talking about the day
before today

EXAMPLES

How are you feeling today?

She left yesterday.

tools

NOUNS

ax	[æks]	a tool with a heavy metal blade and a long handle that is used for cutting wood
battery	[bætəri]	a small object that provides electricity for things such as radios
blade	[bleɪd]	the flat, sharp edge of a knife that is used for cutting; <i>a knife blade</i>
bolt	[boʊlt]	a long piece of metal that you use with a nut to fasten things together; <i>nuts and bolts</i>
bucket	[bʌkɪt]	a round metal or plastic container with a handle, used for holding water; <i>a bucket of water</i>
drill	[drɪl]	a tool for making holes; <i>an electric drill</i>

file	[faɪl]	a tool that you use for rubbing rough objects to make them smooth
flashlight	[flæʃlaɪt]	a small electric light that you carry in your hand (<i>In British English, use torch</i>)
glue	[ɡluː]	a sticky substance used for joining things together
hammer	[hæməɹ]	a tool that is made from a heavy piece of metal attached to the end of a handle, that is used for hitting nails into wood; <i>a hammer and nails</i>
handle	[hændl]	the part of a tool that you hold; <i>a tool handle</i>
knife	[naɪf]	a sharp flat piece of metal with a handle, that you can use to cut things; <i>a sharp knife</i>
ladder	[lædə]	a piece of equipment made of two long pieces of wood or metal with short steps between them, that is used for reaching high places; <i>climb a ladder</i>

machine [məʃɪn] a piece of equipment that uses electricity or an engine to do a particular job

EXAMPLES

The game requires two AA batteries.

You will need scissors and a tube of glue.

nail [neɪl] a thin piece of metal with one pointed end and one flat end that you hit with a hammer in order to fix things together

needle [niːdl̩] a small, thin metal tool with a sharp point that you use for sewing; *a needle and thread*

nut [nʌt] a thick metal ring that you put onto a bolt, that is used for holding heavy things together

paint [peɪnt] a colored liquid that you put onto a surface with a brush

paintbrush [peɪntbrʌʃ] a brush that you use for painting

pliers [plaɪərz] a tool with two handles at one end and two flat metal parts at

		the other that is used for holding or pulling things; <i>a pair of pliers</i>
rope	[r <u>o</u> ʊp]	a type of very thick string that is made by twisting together several strings or wires; <i>a piece of rope</i>
saw	[sɔ]	a metal tool for cutting wood; <i>a saw blade</i>
scaffolding	[skæf <u>ə</u> ldɪŋ]	a frame of metal bars that people can stand on when they are working on the outside of a building; <i>put up/take down scaffolding</i>
screw	[skru]	a small metal object with a sharp end, that you use to join things together
screwdriver	[skru <u>d</u> raɪvər]	a tool that you use for turning screws
shovel	[ʃ <u>ʌ</u> vəl]	a flat tool with a handle that is used for lifting and moving earth or snow
spade	[speɪd]	a tool that is used for digging; <i>a</i>

garden spade

spanner

see **wrench**

(mainly BRIT)

spring

[sprɪŋ]

a long, spiral piece of metal; *a coiled spring*

stepladder

[stɛplædər]

a short ladder that you can fold

EXAMPLES

If you want to repair the wheels, you must remove the four nuts.

Each shelf is attached to the wall with screws.

I'll need the coal shovel.

tape measure

[teɪp məʒər]

a strip of metal, plastic, or cloth with marks on it, used for measuring

tool

[tuːl]

anything that you hold in your hands and use to do a particular type of work

toolbox

[tuːlbɒks]

a box or container for keeping tools in

torch (*BRIT*)

see **flashlight**

varnish

[vɑːrnɪʃ]

a thick, clear liquid that is painted onto things to give them

		a shiny surface
wire	[waɪə̃r]	a long, thin piece of metal; <i>a piece of wire; a wire fence</i>
workshop	[wɜːrkʃɒp]	a place where people make or repair things
wrench	[rɛntʃ]	a metal tool that you use for turning nuts to make them tighter (<i>In British English, use spanner</i>)

VERBS

build	[bɪld]	to make something by joining different things together; <i>build a house/road</i>
cut	[kʌt]	to use something sharp to remove part of something, or to break it
drill	[drɪl]	to make holes using a drill
fix	[fɪks]	1 to repair something 2 to attach something firmly or securely to a particular place
hammer	[hæmə̃r]	to hit nails into wood using a hammer

measure	[mɛʒər]	to find out the size of something
mend	[mɛnd]	to repair something
paint	[peɪnt]	to cover a wall or an object with paint; <i>paint a wall</i>

EXAMPLES

They cut a hole in the roof and put in a piece of glass.

You'll need to drill a hole in the wall.

This morning, a man came to fix my washing machine.

The clock is fixed to the wall.

She hammered a nail into the window frame.

Measure the length of the table.

screw	[skruː]	to join one thing to another thing using a screw
--------------	---------	--

ADJECTIVES

blunt	[blʌnt]	not sharp or pointed; <i>a blunt knife</i>
--------------	---------	--

electric	[ɪlɛktrɪk]	1 working using electricity; <i>an electric motor</i> 2 carrying electricity; <i>an electric plug/switch</i>
-----------------	------------	---

manual

[mænyuəl]

1 used for describing work in which you use your hands or your physical strength
2 operated by hand, rather than by electricity or a motor; *a manual pump*

sharp

[ʃɑrp]

very thin and able to cut through things very easily; *a sharp knife/blade*

EXAMPLES

I screwed the shelf on the wall.

He began his career as a manual worker.

towns and cities

NOUNS

bank	[bæŋk]	a place where people can keep their money
beltway	[bɛltweɪ]	a road that goes around a large town to keep traffic away from the center (<i>In British English, use ring road</i>)
bench	[bɛntʃ]	a long seat made of wood or metal; <i>a park bench</i>
bin (BRIT)		see trash can
bridge	[brɪdʒ]	a structure that is built over a river or a road so that people or vehicles can cross from one side to the other; <i>a railroad bridge</i>
building	[bɪldɪŋ]	a structure that has a roof and walls; <i>new/old buildings; public buildings; an office building</i>
bus station	[bʌs steɪʃən]	a place in a town or a city where a lot of buses stop

bus stop	[bʌs stɒp]	a place on the side of a road, marked by a sign, where a bus stops
café	[kæfeɪ]	a place where you can buy drinks and small meals
capital	[kæpɪtəl]	the city where the government of a country meets; <i>a capital city</i>
car park (BRIT)		see parking lot
castle	[kæslə]	a large building with thick, high walls that was built in the past to protect people during battles
cathedral	[kəθɪdrəl]	a large and important church
church	[tʃɜːtʃ]	a building where Christians go to pray; <i>go to church</i>
citizen	[sɪtɪzən]	a person who lives in a town or city
city	[sɪti]	a large town; <i>a big/large/major city; the city center</i>

EXAMPLES

He crossed the bridge to get to school.

Berlin is the capital of Germany.

His father goes to church every day.

crosswalk	[krɒswɔk]	a place where drivers must stop to let people cross a street (<i>In British English, use pedestrian crossing or zebra crossing</i>)
crowd	[kraʊd]	a large group of people who have gathered together
directions	[dɪrɛkʃənz, daɪ-]	instructions that tell you how to get somewhere
district	[dɪstrɪkt]	a particular area of a city or town; <i>a business/shopping district</i>
fire station	[faɪər steɪʃən]	a building where fire engines and equipment for stopping fires are kept
guided tour	[gaɪdɪd tuə]	a short journey around a place of interest with a person who tells you about what you are seeing
hotel	[həʊtel]	a building where people pay to sleep and eat meals; <i>a luxury/cheap hotel; a five-star hotel; a hotel room; stay in a hotel</i>

Laundromat™	[lɑ̃ndrəmət]	a place where people pay to use machines to wash and dry their clothes
leaflet	[lɪflɪt]	a piece of paper containing information about a particular subject
library	[laɪbrəri]	a place where books are kept for people to use or borrow; <i>the public/local library</i>
litter	[lɪtər]	paper or garbage that people leave lying on the ground in public places
map	[mæp]	a drawing of a city, that shows things like roads and important buildings; <i>a road map; a map of the city</i>
market	[mɑrkit]	a place where people buy and sell products
monument	[mɒnyəmənt]	something that you build to help people remember an important event or person; <i>ancient monuments</i>

EXAMPLES

A huge crowd gathered in the town square.
She stopped the car to ask for directions.
During the afternoon there's a guided tour of the castle.
Do you have a leaflet about the bus tours around York?
I hate it when I see people dropping litter.

mosque	[mɒsk]	a building where Muslims go to pray
museum	[myuziəm]	a building where you can look at interesting and valuable objects; <i>visit a museum</i>
notice	[nəʊtɪs]	a piece of writing in a place where everyone can read it
outskirts	[aʊtskɜːrts]	the parts of a town or a city that are furthest away from its center; <i>live in the outskirts</i>
park	[pɑːk]	a public area of land in a town with grass and trees, where people go to relax and enjoy themselves; <i>a public park</i>
parking lot	[pɑːkɪŋ lɒt]	an area or building where people can leave their cars (<i>In British English, use car park</i>)

parking meter	[pɑːrkɪŋ mɪtər]	a machine in a street that you put money into to pay for leaving your car there
parking space	[pɑːrkɪŋ speɪs]	a space where a car can be parked
pavement (BRIT)		see sidewalk
pedestrian	[pɪdɛstriən]	a person who is walking in a town or city
pedestrian crossing (BRIT)		see crosswalk
places of interest	[pleɪsɪz əv ɪntrɪst, -tərɪst]	buildings or parts of a city which are interesting to visit
population	[pɒpyələɪʃən]	all the people who live in an area
post office	[pəʊst ɔfɪs]	a building where you can buy stamps and mail letters
restroom	[rɛstrʊm, -rʊm]	a room that contains one or more toilets (<i>In British English, use toilet</i>)
restaurant	[rɛstərənt, -	a place where you can buy and

tərənt, -trənt] eat a meal

ring road

see **beltway**

(BRIT)

EXAMPLES

The notice said “Please close the door.”

I found a parking space right outside the apartment building.

She visited museums and other places of interest.

Where is the nearest restroom?

road

[roʊd]

a long piece of hard ground that vehicles travel on; *a main road; a back road*

season ticket

[sizən tikɪt]

a ticket for a number of journeys, that you usually buy at a reduced price; *a weekly/monthly/annual season ticket*

shop (BRIT)

see **store**

shopping center

[ʃɒpɪŋ sɛntər]

an area in a town where a lot of stores have been built close together

sidewalk

[saɪdwɔːk]

a path with a hard surface,

		usually by the side of a road (<i>In British English, use pavement</i>)
sign	[sain]	a piece of wood, metal, or plastic with words or pictures on it that warn you about something, or give you information; <i>a street sign</i>
square	[skwɛər]	an open place with buildings around it in a town or city; <i>the town square; the main/central square</i>
store	[stɔːr]	a place where you buy things; <i>a local/corner store; a store assistant; a store window (In British English, use shop)</i>
street	[stri:t]	a road in a city or a town; <i>the main street; a side street; city streets</i>
suburb	[sʌbɜːrb]	one of the areas on the edge of a city where many people live; <i>the suburbs; a leafy/wealthy suburb</i>
subway	[sʌbweɪ]	in a city, the railroad system in which electric trains travel

below the ground in tunnels;
*take the subway (In British
English, use **the underground**)*

synagogue [sɪnəgɒg] a building where Jewish people
go to pray

taxi [tæksi] a car that you can hire, with its
driver,
to take you where you want to
go; *take/catch a taxi*

EXAMPLES

He was hurrying along the sidewalk.

The sign said, "Welcome to Boston."

He lives at 66 Bingfield Street.

taxi rank see **taxi stand**
(BRIT)

taxi stand [tæksi stænd] a place where taxis wait for
customers
(*In British English, use **taxi rank***)

toilet (BRIT) [tɔɪlət] 1 a large bowl with a seat that
you use when you want to get
rid of waste from your body
2 see **restroom**

tour	[tʊər]	a trip to an interesting place or around several interesting places; <i>a bus tour</i>
tourist	[tʊərɪst]	a person who is visiting a place while on vacations
tower	[taʊər]	a tall, narrow building, or a tall part of another building; <i>a church tower</i>
town	[taʊn]	a place with many streets, buildings, and stores, where people live and work; <i>your home town; a seaside town; the center of town</i>
traffic	[træfɪk]	all the vehicles that are on a particular road at one time; <i>heavy traffic; rush hour traffic</i>
train station	[treɪn steɪʃən]	a place where trains stop so that people can get on or off
trash can	[træʃ kæn]	a container that you put garbage in; <i>put your garbage in the trash can (In British English, use bin)</i>
the underground		see subway

(BRIT)

zebra crossing

see **crosswalk**

(BRIT)

zone

[zoʊn]

an area where something particular happens; *an industrial zone*

VERBS

go shopping

to go to stores to buy things

go sightseeing

to travel around a town to visit famous and interesting places

EXAMPLES

Michael took me on a tour of the nearby islands.

I'm going into town.

Where is the train station?

ADJECTIVES

busy

[bizi]

full of people who are doing things; *a busy street/road*

clean

[kli:n]

not dirty

crowded

[krɑ:ʊdɪd]

full of people; *crowded streets; a*

crowded bus/train

dirty	[dɜrti]	covered with unwanted substances such as litter
downtown	[daʊntaʊn]	belonging to the part of a city where the large stores and businesses are; <i>a downtown hotel</i>
industrial	[ɪndʌstriəl]	used for describing a city or a country in which industry is very important; <i>an industrial town/city</i>
lost	[lɒst]	not knowing where you are; unable to find your way; <i>I'm lost.</i>
suburban	[səbɜrbən]	in or relating to the suburbs; <i>a suburban street/district</i>
urban	[ɜrbən]	relating to a city or a town; <i>urban areas</i>

ADVERBS

left	[lɛft]	opposite the side that most people write with; <i>turn left</i>
right	[raɪt]	to the side that is towards the east when you look north; <i>turn right</i>

straight ahead [streɪt əhɛd]

in one direction only; without a curve or bend; *go straight ahead*

PHRASE

no entry

if a sign says “no entry,” it means that people are not allowed to go into a particular street or area

EXAMPLES

This is a crowded city of 2 million.

trains

NOUNS

arrival	[əraɪvəl]	the occasion when a train arrives somewhere; <i>arrivals and departures</i>
barrier	[bæriər]	a fence or a wall that prevents people or things from moving from one area to another
buffet (BRIT)		see dining car
car	[kɑr]	one of the sections of a train where people sit; <i>a railroad/train car</i>
compartment	[kəmˈpɑrtmənt]	1 one of the separate spaces in a train car (= section of a train); <i>a first-class compartment</i> 2 a part of a train that is used for keeping luggage in; <i>a luggage compartment</i>
conductor	[kəndʌktər]	a person on a train whose job is to check tickets

connection	[kənɛkʃən]	a train that leaves after another one arrives and allows you to continue your journey by changing from one to the other
departure	[dɪpɑrtʃər]	the occasion when a train leaves somewhere; <i>a train departure</i>
destination	[dɛstɪneɪʃən]	the place a train is going to; <i>arrive at your destination</i>
dining car	[daɪnɪŋ kɑr]	the part of a train where food and drink is sold (<i>In British English, use buffet</i>)
driver	[draɪvər]	the person who is driving a train; <i>a train driver</i>
engine	[ɛndʒɪn]	the front part of a train that pulls the rest of it
fare	[fɛər]	the money that you pay for a trip in a train; <i>a train fare</i>
fast train	[fæst treɪn]	a train that travels very fast, and goes directly to a place, making few stops

EXAMPLES

I was afraid that I would miss my connection.

The dining car is now open.

freight train	[fret treɪn]	a train that carries goods and not people (<i>In British English, use goods train</i>)
goods train (BRIT)		see freight train
intercity train	[ɪntərsɪti treɪn]	a fast train that travels long distances between cities, making few stops
journey	[dʒɜːni]	an occasion when you travel from one place to another; a <i>train journey</i>
left-luggage office (BRIT)		see luggage storage office
line	[laɪn]	a route that trains move along; <i>the railroad line</i>
locker (BRIT)		see luggage storage
lost and found office	[lɒst ənd faʊnd ɔfɪs]	a place at a train station where you can go to look for things that you have lost and that someone else has found

luggage	[lʌɡɪdʒ]	the bags that you take with you when you travel; <i>lost luggage</i>
luggage rack	[lʌɡɪdʒ ræk]	a shelf on a train for putting luggage on
luggage storage	[lʌɡɪdʒ stɔːrɪdʒ]	a small locker at a train station where you can leave luggage that you want to pick up later (<i>In British English, use locker</i>)
luggage storage office	[lʌɡɪdʒ stɔːrɪdʒ ɔːfɪs]	a place at a train station where you can pay to leave luggage for a short time (<i>In British English, use left-luggage office</i>)
one-way	[wʌn weɪ]	a ticket for a journey from one place to another but not back again (<i>In British English, use single</i>)
passenger	[pæsɪndʒər]	a person who is traveling in a train
platform	[plætˌfɔːrm]	the area in a train station where you wait for a train; <i>a train platform</i>
porter	[pɔːrtər]	a person whose job is to carry people's luggage in a train

station

EXAMPLES

We stayed on the train to the end of the line.

We apologize to any passengers whose journey was delayed today.

The next train to London will depart from platform 3.

railroad	[reɪlroʊd]	a metal track between two places that trains travel along; <i>railroad tracks</i> (<i>In British English, use railway</i>)
railroad crossing	[reɪlroʊd krɒsɪŋ]	a place where a railroad line crosses a road
railway (<i>BRIT</i>)		see railroad
reservation	[rɛzərvɛɪʃən]	a seat that a transportation company keeps specially for you; <i>a seat reservation</i>
return (<i>BRIT</i>)		see round trip
round trip	[raʊnd trɪp]	a ticket for a journey to a place and back again (<i>In British English, use return</i>)
schedule	[skɛdʒʊl, -uəl]	a list of the times when trains arrive and depart; <i>a train</i>

		<i>schedule (In British English, use timetable)</i>
season ticket	[sɪzən tɪkɪt]	a ticket for a number of train rides, that you usually buy at a cheaper price
seat	[si:t]	something that you can sit on; <i>reserve a seat</i>
single (BRIT)		see one way
sleeper	[slɪpər]	1 a train with beds for passengers on overnight journeys 2 same as sleeping car
sleeping car	[slɪpɪŋ kɑː]	a railroad car with beds in it
slow train	[sləʊ treɪn]	a train that travels slowly, making many stops
station	[steɪʃən]	a place where trains stop so that people can get on or off; <i>a train station</i>
steam engine	[sti:m ɛndʒɪn]	an engine that uses steam as a means of power

EXAMPLES

The road ran beside a railroad.

Is this seat free?

This seat is taken.

I'll take you to the station.

I'll come and pick you up at the station.

In 1941, the train would have been pulled by a steam engine.

subway	[sʌbweɪ]	in a city, the railroad system in which trains travel below the ground; <i>the New York subway (In British English, use the underground)</i>
suitcase	[sɪtkes]	a case for carrying your clothes when you are traveling; <i>pack/unpack a suitcase</i>
ticket	[tɪkɪt]	a small piece of paper that shows that you have paid to travel on a train; <i>buy a ticket; a train ticket</i>
ticket collector	[tɪkɪt kələktər]	a person who collects the tickets of passengers when they get off a train
ticket office	[tɪkɪt ɔfɪs]	the place where you buy tickets at a train station
timetable		see schedule

(BRIT)

track [træk] one of the metal lines that trains travel along; *a railroad track*

train [treɪn] a long vehicle that is pulled by an engine along a railroad; *catch a train; get on/off a train; take the train; train travel*

the tube [ðə tʌb] same as **the underground** (BRIT)

the underground (BRIT) see **subway**

waiting room [weɪtɪŋ rum] a room in a train station where people can sit down while they wait

whistle [wɪsəl] a small tube that you blow into in order to produce a loud sound; *blow a whistle*

VERBS

approach [əprəʊtʃ] to move closer to something

arrive [əraɪv] to come to a place from somewhere else

book [bʊk] to arrange to have or use something at a later time; *book a train ticket*

EXAMPLES

He came to Glasgow by train.

I heard the train approaching.

Their train arrived on time.

cancel [kænsəl] to say that a train that should travel will not be traveling

delay [dileɪ] to make someone or something late; *The train is delayed.*

depart [dipɑrt] to leave

miss [mis] to arrive too late to get on a train; *miss your train*

ADJECTIVES

due [du] expected to happen or arrive at a particular time; *Find out when the next train is due.*

first-class [fɜrst klæs] relating to the best and most

		expensive seats on a train; <i>a first-class cabin; a first-class ticket</i>
high-speed	[haɪ spɪd]	that travels very fast; <i>a high-speed train</i>
late	[leɪt]	after the time that something should happen
non-smoking	[nɒn sməʊkɪŋ]	a non-smoking area is a public place where people are not allowed to smoke
overcrowded	[oʊvərkraʊdɪd]	with too many people
smoking	[sməʊkɪŋ]	a smoking area is a public place where people are allowed to smoke; <i>the smoking section/area</i>

EXAMPLES

Many trains have been canceled.

Thousands of rail passengers were delayed yesterday.

Your train is due to leave in three minutes.

The train is late.

weather

NOUNS

air	[<u>ɛər</u>]	the mixture of gases all around us that we breathe; <i>fresh air</i> ; <i>warm/hot air</i>
atmosphere	[<u>æt</u> məsfiər]	the layer of air or other gases around a planet
climate	[kla <u>ɪ</u> mi:t]	the normal weather in a place; <i>a warm/cold climate</i> ; <i>climate change</i>
cloud	[kla <u>ʊ</u> d]	a white or gray thing in the sky that is made of drops of water
darkness	[d <u>ɑː</u> rknɪs]	the state of being dark, without any light
drought	[dra <u>ʊ</u> t]	a long period of time with no rain
east	[<u>iː</u> st]	the direction that is in front of you when you look at the sun in the morning; <i>The sun rises in the east.</i>

flood	[flʌd]	an occasion when a lot of water covers land that is usually dry
fog	[fɒg]	thick cloud that is close to the ground
frost	[frɒst]	ice like white powder that forms outside when the weather is very cold
gale	[geɪl]	a very strong wind
hail	[heɪl]	small balls of ice that fall like rain from the sky
heat	[hi:t]	when something is hot
hurricane	[hʊrɪkən, hʌr-]	a storm with very strong winds and rain
ice	[aɪs]	frozen water

EXAMPLES

Keith opened the window and felt the cold air on his face.

There is an extra hour of darkness on winter mornings.

The drought has killed all their crops.

The car crash happened in thick fog.

A strong gale was blowing.

Our clothes dried quickly in the heat of the sun.

The ground was covered with ice.

lightning	[laɪtnɪŋ]	the very bright flashes of light in the sky that happen during a storm; <i>thunder and lightning; a flash of lightning</i>
mist	[mɪst]	a lot of tiny drops of water in the air, that make it difficult to see; <i>mist and fog; morning mist</i>
monsoon	[mɒnsun]	the season in Southern Asia when there is a lot of very heavy rain; <i>the monsoon rains; the monsoon season</i>
north	[nɔːrθ]	the direction that is on your left when you are looking at the sun in the morning
puddle	[pʌdʌl]	a small pool of water on the ground
rain	[reɪn]	water that falls from the clouds in small drops; <i>heavy/pouring rain; go out in the rain</i>
rainbow	[reɪnbou]	a half circle of different colors that you can sometimes see in the sky when it rains
raindrop	[reɪndrɒp]	a single drop of rain

sky	[sk <u>aɪ</u>]	the space above the Earth that you can see when you stand outside and look upwards; <i>in the sky</i>
snow	[sn <u>oʊ</u>]	soft white frozen water that falls from the sky
snowflake	[sn <u>oʊ</u> fleɪk]	one of the soft, white bits of frozen water that fall as snow
south	[s <u>aʊ</u> θ]	the direction that is on your right when you are looking at the sun in the morning
storm	[st <u>ɔː</u> rm]	very bad weather, with heavy rain and strong winds; <i>violent/severe storms; tropical storms</i>

EXAMPLES

One man died when he was struck by lightning.

In the north, snow and ice cover the ground.

Young children love splashing in puddles.

Outside a light rain was falling.

Today we have clear blue skies.

Six inches of snow fell.

sun	[sʌn]	1 the ball of fire in the sky that gives us heat and light 2 the heat and light that comes from the sun
sunshine	[sʌnʃaɪn]	the light and heat that comes from the sun
temperature	[tɛmprətʃər, -tʃʊər]	how hot or cold it is; <i>warm/cold temperatures; average temperature</i>
thermometer	[θɜrmpɹɪtər]	an instrument for measuring how hot or cold something is
thunder	[θʌndər]	the loud noise that you sometimes hear from the sky during a storm
thunderstorm	[θʌndərstɔrm]	a very noisy storm
tornado	[tɔrneɪdɔ]	a storm with strong winds that spin around very fast and cause a lot of damage
tsunami	[tsʊnɑmi]	a very large wave that flows onto the land and destroys things
umbrella	[ʌmbrɛlə]	a thing that you hold over your head to protect yourself from the rain; <i>put up your umbrella</i>

weather	[wɛðər]	the temperature and conditions outside, for example if it is raining, hot, or windy; <i>cold/bad/wet weather; hot/warm weather</i>
weather forecast	[wɛðər fɔrkæst]	a statement saying what the weather will be like for the next few days; <i>watch/listen to the weather forecast</i>
west	[wɛst]	the direction that is in front of you when you look at the sun in the evening
wind	[wɪnd]	air that moves

EXAMPLES

The sun is shining.

Suddenly, the sun came out.

They went outside to sit in the sun.

She was sitting outside a cafe in bright sunshine.

What's the weather like?

The sun sets in the west.

A strong wind was blowing from the north.

VERBS

blow	[bl <u>oʊ</u>]	when a wind or breeze blows, the air moves
freeze	[fri <u>z</u>]	to become solid because the temperature is low
melt	[m <u>ɛ</u> lt]	to change from a solid substance to a liquid because of heat
rain	[r <u>eɪ</u> n]	when it rains, water falls from the clouds in small drops
shine	[ʃ <u>aɪ</u> n]	to give out bright light; <i>The sun is shining.</i>
snow	[sn <u>oʊ</u>]	when it snows, soft white frozen water falls from the sky
thaw	[θ <u>ɔ</u>]	if snow or ice thaws, it becomes warmer and changes to liquid

ADJECTIVES

cloudy	[kla <u>ʊ</u> di]	with a lot of clouds in the sky; <i>a cloudy day/sky</i>
cold	[k <u>oʊ</u> ld]	without any warmth; <i>cold weather; cold air</i>
cool	[k <u>u</u> l]	having a low temperature, but not cold; <i>cool air</i>

dry	[draɪ]	without any rain
freezing	[frɪzɪŋ]	very cold
hot	[hɒt]	describing the weather when the temperature is high; <i>a hot day</i>

EXAMPLES

The wind is blowing.

Last winter the water froze in all our pipes.

The snow melted.

It's raining.

It snowed heavily all night.

The snow thawed.

The Sahara is one of the driest places in Africa.

It's freezing.

It's too hot to play tennis.

humid	[hyuːmɪd]	wet and warm; <i>humid air; humid weather/conditions</i>
mild	[maɪld]	not too hot and not too cold; <i>a mild winter; mild weather</i>
rainy	[reɪni]	raining a lot; <i>a rainy day</i>
stormy	[stɔːrmi]	with strong winds and heavy rain; <i>stormy weather</i>
sunny	[sʌni]	with the sun shining brightly

tropical	[trɒpɪkəl]	belonging to or typical of the hot, wet areas of the world; <i>a tropical climate; tropical heat</i>
windy	[wɪndi]	with a lot of wind; <i>a windy day</i>

EXAMPLES

The weather was warm and sunny.

geographical place names

Here is a list of the names of well-known places in the world:

Afghanistan /æfgænistæn, -stæn/

Africa /æfrɪkə/

Albania /ælbeɪniə/

Algeria /ældʒɪəriə/

American Samoa /əmerɪkən səməʊə/

Andorra /ændɔːrə/

Angola /æŋgəʊlə/

Antarctica /æntɑːrktɪkə/

Antigua and Barbuda /æntɪgə ənd bɑːbʊdə/

the Arctic /ði ɑːrktɪk/

Argentina /ɑːrdʒəntɪnə/

Armenia /ɑːrmɪniə/

Asia /eɪʒə/

the Atlantic /ði ətɫæntɪk/

Australia /ɔːstreɪliə/

Austria /ɔːstriə/

Azerbaijan /æzərbɑːdʒɑːn/

the Bahamas /ðə bəhɑːməz/

Bahrain /bəreɪn/

Bangladesh /bæŋglədəʃ/

Barbados /bɑrbeɪdɔs/

Belarus /beləˈrʊs, byel-/

Belgium /beldʒəm/

Belize /bəˈliːz/

Benin /benɪn/

Bhutan /butɑn/

Bolivia /bəˈlɪviə/

Bosnia and Herzegovina /bɒzniə ənd hɜːtsəɡoʊvɪnə/

Botswana /bɒtswɑnə/

Brazil /brəˈzɪl/

Brunei /brunaɪ/

Bulgaria /bʌlɡeəriə/

Burkina-Faso /bɜːkɪnəfæsɔ/

Burma /bɜːrmə/

Burundi /bərʊndi/

Cambodia /kæmbɒdiə/

Cameroon /kæməˈruːn/

Canada /kænədə/

Cape Verde /keɪp vɜːrd/

the Caribbean /ðə kærɪˈbiːən, kærɪˈbiən/

the Central African Republic /ðə sɛntrəl æfrɪkən rɪpʌblik/

Chad /tʃæd/

Chile /tʃɪli/

(the People's Republic of) China /('ðə pi:pəlz rɪp'ʌblɪk əv) tʃaɪnə/

Colombia /kəl'ʌmbiə/

Comoros /kɒmər'ouz/

(the Republic of) Congo /('ðə rɪp'ʌblɪk əv) kɒŋɡou/

(the Democratic Republic of) Congo /('ðə dɛməkrætɪk rɪp'ʌblɪk əv) kɒŋɡou/

Costa Rica /kɒstə rɪkə/

Côte d'Ivoire /kɔʊt di'vɔ:ər/

Croatia /krou'eɪʃə/

Cuba /kyu:bə/

Cyprus /saɪprəs/

the Czech Republic /ðə tʃɛk rɪp'ʌblɪk/

Denmark /dɛnmɑ:k/

Djibouti /dʒɪbu:ti/

Dominica /dɒmɪnɪkə, dəmɪnɪkə/

the Dominican Republic /ðə dəmɪnɪkən rɪp'ʌblɪk/

East Timor /i:st tɪmər/

Ecuador /ɛkwədər/

Egypt /ɪdʒɪpt/

El Salvador /el sæl'vədər/

England /ɪŋɡlənd/

Equatorial Guinea /ɛkwətɔ:riəl ɡɪni/

Eritrea /erɪtriə/
Estonia /estəʊniə/
Ethiopia /iθiəʊpiə/
Europe /yʊərəp/
Fiji /fiːdʒi/
Finland /fɪnlənd/
France /fræns/
Gabon /gæbɒn/
Gambia /gæmbiə/
Georgia /dʒɔːrdʒə/
Germany /dʒɜːrməni/
Ghana /gɑːnə/
Great Britain /greɪt brɪtən/
Greece /griːs/
Greenland /grɪnlənd/
Grenada /grɪneɪdə/
Guatemala /gwɑːtəmɑːlə/
Guinea /ɡiːni/
Guinea-Bissau /ɡiːnɪbɪsəʊ/
Guyana /ɡaɪənə/
Haiti /heɪti/
Holland /hɒplənd/
Honduras /hɒndʊərəs/

Hungary /hʌŋgəri/

Iceland /aɪslənd/

India /ɪndiə/

Indonesia /ɪndəniːzə/

Iran /ɪrɑn. ɪræn/

Iraq /ɪrɑk, ɪræk/

(the Republic of) Ireland /('ðə rɪpʌblɪk əv) aɪərlənd

Israel /ɪzreɪəl/

Italy /ɪtəli/

Jamaica /dʒəmeɪkə/

Japan /dʒəpæn/

Jordan /dʒɔrdən/

Kazakhstan /kæzækstæn, kɑzɑkstɑn/

Kenya /kɛnyə/

Kiribati /kɪrɪbɑti/

Kuwait /kuweɪt/

Kyrgyzstan /kɪrgɪstæn, -stɑn/

Laos /ləʊs/

Latvia /lætviə, lɑt-/

Lebanon /lebənɒn, -nən/

Lesotho /ləsəʊtəʊ/

Liberia /laɪbɪəriə/

Libya /lɪbiə/

Liechtenstein /lɪktənstaɪn/
Lithuania /lɪθuˈeɪniə/
Luxembourg /lʌksəmbɜːrg/
Macedonia /mæˈsɪdʊniə/
Madagascar /mædəˈgæskər/
Malawi /məˈlɑːwi/
Malaysia /məˈleɪzə/
the Maldives /ðə mɔːldɪvz/
Mali /mɑːli/
Malta /mɔːltə/
the Marshall Islands /ðə mɑːrʃəl aɪləndz/
Mauritania /mɔːrɪteɪniə/
Mauritius /mɔːrɪʃəs/
the Mediterranean /ðə medɪtəˈreɪniən/
Mexico /meksɪkoʊ/
Micronesia /maɪkrəˈniːzə/
Moldova /mɔːldoʊvə/
Monaco /mɒnəkoʊ/
Mongolia /mɒŋɡoʊliə/
Montenegro /mɒntɪˈneɪɡroʊ, -nɪɡroʊ/
Morocco /məˈrɒkoʊ/
Mozambique /moʊzæmbɪk/
Myanmar /myanmɑːr/

Namibia /nəˈmɪbiə/
Nauru /nɑːru, nɔːru/
Nepal /nɪpəl, -pəl/
the Netherlands /ðə neðərləndz/
New Zealand /nu zɪlənd/
Nicaragua /nɪkəˈrɑːɡwə/
Niger /nɑːdʒər, nɪʒeər/
Nigeria /naɪdʒɪəriə/
Northern Ireland /nɔːrðərn aɪərlənd/
North Korea /nɔːrθ kəriə/
Norway /nɔːrweɪ/
Oman /oʊmɑːn/
the Pacific /ðə pəˈsɪfɪk/
Pakistan /pækɪstæn, pɑːkɪstæn /
Panama /pænəmə/
Papua New Guinea /pæpyʊə nu ɡɪni/
Paraguay /pærəˈɡwɑɪ, -ɡweɪ/
Peru /pəru/
the Philippines /ðə fɪləˈpɪnz/
Poland /pəʊlənd/
Portugal /pɔːtʃəɡəl/
Puerto Rico /pwertə rɪkoʊ, pɔːrtə/
Qatar /kɑːtɑːr, kətɑːr/

Romania /roumeniə/

Russia /rʌʃə/

Rwanda /ruɑndə/

St Kitts and Nevis /seint kɪts ənd nivis/

St Lucia /seint luʃə/

St Vincent and the Grenadines /seint vɪnsənt ənd ðə grenədɪnz,
grenədɪnz /

Samoa /səmoʊə/

San Marino /sæn mərɪnoʊ/

São Tomé and Príncipe /sɑu təmeɪ ənd prɪnsipeɪ/

Saudi Arabia /sɑudi ərebiə/

Scotland /skɒtlənd/

Senegal /senigəl/

Serbia /sɜrb*ə*/

the Seychelles /ðə seiʃelz/

Sierra Leone /siərə lioun/

Singapore /sɪŋəpɔːr/

Slovakia /slouvɑkiə, -væk-/

Slovenia /slouviniə/

the Solomon Islands /ðə sɒləmən aɪləndz/

Somalia /səmɑliə/

South Africa /sauθ əfrikə/

South Korea /sɑuθ kəriə/

Spain /speɪn/

Sri Lanka /sri lʌŋkə, læŋkə, ʃri/

Sudan /sudʌn/

Suriname /sʊərɪnɑm, -næm/

Swaziland /swɑzɪlænd/

Sweden /swɪdən/

Switzerland /swɪtsərlənd/

Syria /sɪəriə/

Taiwan /taɪwɑn/

Tajikistan /tɑdʒɪkɪstæn, -stɑn/

Tanzania /tænzənɪə/

Thailand /taɪlænd/

Togo /toʊgoʊ/

Tonga /tɒŋgə/

Trinidad and Tobago /trɪnɪdæd ənd təbeɪgoʊ/

Tunisia /tunɪʒə/

Turkey /tɜrki/

Turkmenistan /tɜrkmenɪstæn, -stɑn/

Tuvalu /tuvəlu/

Uganda /yugændə, ugɑndə/

Ukraine /yukreɪn/

the United Arab Emirates /ði yunaɪtɪd ærəb ɛmirəts/

the United Kingdom /ði yunaɪtɪd kɪŋdəm/

the United States of America /ði yunáitid stéits əv əmɛrɪkə/

Uruguay /yʊərəgweɪ, -gwaɪ/

Uzbekistan /ʊzbəkɪstæn, -stæn/

Vanuatu /vɑnuɑtu/

the Vatican City /ðə vætɪkən sɪti/

Venezuela /vɛnɪzweɪlə/

Vietnam /vyɛtnɑm, -næm/

Wales /weɪlz/

Yemen /yɛmən/

Zambia /zæmbiə/

Zimbabwe /zɪmbɑbweɪ/

irregular verbs

I NFINITIVE	P AST T ENSE	P AST P ARTICIPLE
arise	arose	arisen
be	was, were	been
beat	beat	beaten
become	became	become
begin	began	begun
bend	bent	bent
bet	bet	bet
bind	bound	bound
bite	bit	bitten
bleed	bled	bled
blow	blew	blown
break	broke	broken
bring	brought	brought
build	built	built
burn	burned <i>or</i> burnt	burned <i>or</i> burnt

burst	burst	burst
buy	bought	bought
catch	caught	caught
choose	chose	chosen
cling	clung	clung
come	came	come
cost	cost	cost
creep	crept	crept
cut	cut	cut
deal	dealt	dealt
dig	dug	dug
dive	dived <i>or</i> dove	dived
do	did	done
draw	drew	drawn
dream	dreamed <i>or</i> dreamt	dreamed <i>or</i> dreamt
drink	drank	drunk
drive	drove	driven
eat	ate	eaten
fall	fell	fallen

feed	fed	fed
feel	felt	felt
fight	fought	fought
find	found	found
fly	flew	flown
forbid	forbade	forbidden
forget	forgot	forgotten
freeze	froze	frozen
get	got	gotten, got
give	gave	given
go	went	gone
grind	ground	ground
grow	grew	grown
hang	hung	hung
have	had	had
hear	heard	heard
hide	hid	hidden
hit	hit	hit
hold	held	held

hurt	hurt	hurt
keep	kept	kept
kneel	kneeled <i>or</i> knelt	kneeled <i>or</i> knelt
know	knew	known
lay	laid	laid
lead	led	led
lean	leaned	leaned
leap	leaped <i>or</i> leapt	leaped <i>or</i> leapt
learn	learned	learned
leave	left	left
lend	lent	lent
let	let	let
lie	lay	lain
light	lit <i>or</i> lighted	lit <i>or</i> lighted
lose	lost	lost
make	made	made
mean	meant	meant
meet	met	met
pay	paid	paid

put	put	put
quit	quit	quit
read	read	read
ride	rode	ridden
ring	rang	rung
rise	rose	risen
run	ran	run
say	said	said
see	saw	seen
seek	sought	sought
sell	sold	sold
send	sent	sent
set	set	set
shake	shook	shaken
shine	shined <i>or</i> shone	shined <i>or</i> shone
shoot	shot	shot
show	showed	shown
shrink	shrank	shrunk
shut	shut	shut

sing	sang	sung
sink	sank	sunk
sit	sat	sat
sleep	slept	slept
slide	slid	slid
smell	smelled	smelled
speak	spoke	spoken
speed	sped <i>or</i> speeded	sped <i>or</i> speeded
spell	spelled	spelled
spend	spent	spent
spill	spilled	spilled
spit	spit <i>or</i> spat	spit, <i>or</i> spat
spoil	spoiled	spoiled
spread	spread	spread
spring	sprang	sprung
stand	stood	stood
steal	stole	stolen
stick	stuck	stuck
sting	stung	stung

stink	stank	stunk
strike	struck	struck <i>or</i> stricken
swear	swore	sworn
sweep	swept	swept
swell	swelled	swollen
swim	swam	swum
swing	swung	swung
take	took	taken
teach	taught	taught
tear	tore	torn
tell	told	told
think	thought	thought
throw	threw	thrown
wake	woke <i>or</i> waked	woken <i>or</i> waked
wear	wore	worn
weep	wept	wept
win	won	won
wind	wound	wound
write	wrote	written

measurements

LENGTH

inch (1 in. = 2.54 cm)

foot (1 ft. = 30.48 cm)

yard (1 yd. = 91.44 cm)

millimeter (mm)

centimeter (cm)

meter (m)

kilometer (km)

mile (= 1.61 kilometers)

WEIGHT

ton = 0.9 metric ton

ounce (1 oz. = 28g)

pound (1 lb. = 454g)

milligram (mg)

gram (g)

kilogram (kg)

CAPACITY

pint (= 0.57 liters)

gallon (= 4.55 liters)

milliliter (ml)

liter (l)

EXAMPLES

This tiny plant is only a few inches high.

They drove 600 miles across the desert.

The box weighs 4.5 kilograms.

The boat was carrying 30,000 tons of oil.

Each carton contains a pint of milk.

Adults should drink about two liters of water each day.

numbers/ordinal numbers

1	one
2	two
3	three
4	four
5	five
6	six
7	seven
8	eight
9	nine
10	ten
11	eleven
12	twelve
13	thirteen
14	fourteen
15	fifteen
16	sixteen

17	seventeen
18	eighteen
19	nineteen
20	twenty
21	twenty-one
22	twenty-two
30	thirty
40	forty
50	fifty
60	sixty
70	seventy
80	eighty
90	ninety
100	a/one hundred
101	a/one hundred and one
1,000	a/one thousand
10,000	ten thousand
100,000	a/one hundred thousand
1,000,000	a/one million

NUMBERS OVER 20

We write numbers over 20 (except 30, 40, 50, etc) with a hyphen.

25 twenty-five

45 forty-five

82 eighty-two

59 fifty-nine

A OR ONE?

100 a/one hundred

1,000,000 a/one million

1,000 a/one thousand

One is more formal, and is often used in order to be very clear and precise.

LARGE NUMBERS

We often use a comma to divide large numbers into groups of three figures.

1,235,578 one million, two hundred and thirty-five thousand, five hundred and seventy-eight

ORDINAL NUMBERS

1st first

2nd second

3rd third

4 th	fourth
5 th	fifth
6 th	sixth
7 th	seventh
8 th	eighth
9 th	ninth
10 th	tenth
11 th	eleventh
12 th	twelfth
13 th	thirteenth
14 th	fourteenth
15 th	fifteenth
16 th	sixteenth
17 th	seventeenth
18 th	eighteenth
19 th	nineteenth
20 th	twentieth
21 st	twenty-first
22 nd	twenty-second

30 th	thirtieth
40 th	fortieth
50 th	fiftieth
60 th	sixtieth
70 th	seventieth
80 th	eightieth
90 th	ninetieth
100 th	hundredth
101 st	hundred and first
200 th	two hundredth
1,000 th	thousandth
10,000 th	ten thousandth
100,000 th	hundred thousandth
1,000,000 th	millionth

EXAMPLES

The total amount was one hundred and forty-nine dollars and thirty cents.

These shoes cost over a hundred dollars.

Kate won first prize in the writing competition.

It's Michael's seventh birthday tomorrow.

My office is on the twelfth floor.

I'm doing a project about fashion in the eighteenth century.

We're celebrating the 200th anniversary of independence next year.

The company announced that it has just served its millionth customer.

people of the world

There are different ways that the noun for a place changes to become the noun for a person from that place, or to become the adjective for that place. For places ending in “-a,” the person noun and the adjective usually end in “-an,” for example

Australia→Australian.

I live in Australia.

I am an Australian.

I am Australian.

...the Australian flag.

Here are some other examples of words that work this way:

Place nouns that end in -a → person nouns and adjectives that end in -an

Africa→African, America→American, Asia→Asian,

Austria→Austrian, Bulgaria→Bulgarian, Cuba→Cuban,

India→Indian, Kenya→Kenyan, Malaysia→Malaysian,

Russia→Russian, Slovakia→Slovakian, Slovenia→Slovenian

There is no plural form for “person” words that end in “-s” or “-ese,” for example “a Swiss” and “a Chinese”. The singular form of these words is also not used very often, and it is more common to say “a Swiss man” or “a Chinese woman.”

If there is a language related to a particular country, the name of the language is usually the same as the adjective describing the country, for example *Polish, Japanese, Italian*.

Place (noun)	Adjective	Person (noun)
Afghanistan	Afghan	an Afghan
Argentina	Argentinean	an Argentine
Bangladesh	Bangladeshi	a Bangladeshi
Belgium	Belgian	a Belgian
Brazil	Brazilian	a Brazilian
Britain	British	a Briton
Canada	Canadian	a Canadian
Chile	Chilean	a Chilean
China	Chinese	a Chinese
the Czech Republic	Czech	a Czech
Denmark	Danish	a Dane
Egypt	Egyptian	an Egyptian
England	English	an Englishman or an Englishwoman
Europe	European	a European

Finland	Finnish	a Finn
France	French	a Frenchman or a Frenchwoman
Germany	German	a German
Greece	Greek	a Greek
Hungary	Hungarian	a Hungarian
Iceland	Icelandic	an Icelander
Iran	Iranian	an Iranian
Iraq	Iraqi	an Iraqi
Ireland	Irish	an Irishman or an Irishwoman
Italy	Italian	an Italian
Japan	Japanese	a Japanese
Mexico	Mexican	a Mexican
Morocco	Moroccan	a Moroccan
The Netherlands	Dutch	a Dutchman or a Dutchwoman
New Zealand	New Zealand	a New Zealander
Norway	Norwegian	a Norwegian
Pakistan	Pakistani	a Pakistani
Peru	Peruvian	a Peruvian

Poland	Polish	a Pole
Portugal	Portuguese	a Portuguese
Scotland	Scottish	a Scot or a Scotsman or a Scotswoman
Spain	Spanish	a Spaniard
Sweden	Swedish	a Swede
Switzerland	Swiss	a Swiss
Taiwan	Taiwanese	a Taiwanese
Turkey	Turkish	a Turk
Vietnam	Vietnamese	a Vietnamese
Wales	Welsh	a Welshman or a Welshwoman

EXAMPLES

Have you ever been to Peru?

She was born in China.

Five Germans and twelve Spaniards were killed in the crash.

Can you speak Welsh?

He is fluent in Vietnamese.

He is English.

...a Mexican restaurant.

...the French president.

times and dates

TELLING THE TIME

Here are the most common ways of saying and writing the time.

four o'clock

nine o'clock

twelve o'clock

four

nine

twelve

4.00

9.00

12.00

four in the morning

nine in the morning

twelve in the morning

4 a.m.

9 a.m.

12 a.m.

midday

noon

four in the afternoon

nine in the evening

twelve at night

4 p.m.

9 p.m.

12 p.m.

midnight

half past eleven

eleven-thirty

11.30

quarter after twelve (*American*)

twelve-fifteen

12.15

quarter past twelve (*British*)

twelve forty-five

12.45

quarter to one (*British*)

two twenty-five

2.25

seven-fifty

7.50

twenty-five past two (*British*)

ten to eight (*British*)

WRITING DATES

There are several different ways of writing a date.

April 20

20 April

April 20th

20th April

(say “April twentieth” or “the twentieth of April”)

If you want to give the year, you put it last.

December 15th, 2012

(say “December fifteenth, twenty twelve”)

You can write a date in figures. In American English, you put the month first, then the day, then the year. In British English, you put the day first, then the month, then the year.

In American English, December 15th, 2011 is:

index

A

absent

academic

accelerate

accelerator

accessible

accident

accommodation

accountant

accounts

ache

acid

acoustic

acquaintance

acrylic

act

actor

actress

ad

add

addition

address

adopt

adult

advert

advertise

advertising

adverts

aerial

aerobics

aeroplane

afternoon

age

agent

AGM

ago

agriculture

AIDS

air

aircraft

airline

airplane

airport

airsick

air-traffic controller

aisle

à la carte

alarm call

alarm clock

album

alcoholic drink

algebra

allowance

alphabet

aluminium

aluminum

ambassador

ambitious

ambulance

American football

anchor

anger

angle

angry

animal

animated

ankle

annoyed

annual

annual leave

answer

ant

antenna

antler

anxious

apartment

appetizer

apple

appliance

application

apply for a job

appointment

apprentice

approach

apricot

April

aquarium

architect

area

area code
arithmetic
arm
armchair
armed
army
arrest
arrival
arrivals
arrive
art
artery
art gallery
article
artist
arts
art school
ash
ashamed
ask
aspirin
assassinate
assault

assemble

assembly

assembly line

assignment

astronaut

astronomy

asylum seeker

athlete

at home

ATM

atmosphere

atom

atomic

attachment

attendance

at the moment

attic

attorney

aubergine

audience

audition

August

aunt

auntie

author

autumn

average

avocado

ax

axis

B

baa

baby

baby boy

baby girl

bachelor

bachelor's degree

back

background

back light

back something up

bacon

bad

badminton

bag

baggage

baggage claim

baggage reclaim

bake

baked

baker's

balance

balcony

bald

ball

ballet

ballpoint pen

ban

banana

band

bandage

Band-aid

bangs

bank

bank account

banking

bankrupt

baptism

baptize

bar

barbecue

bar chart

barcode

bargain

bar graph

bark

bar mitzvah

barn

barrier

baseball

basement

basket

basketball

bat

bath

bathing suit

bathroom

bathtub

bat mitzvah

battery

bay

beach

beak

beans

bear

beard

beat

beautiful

be born

become

bed

bed and breakfast

bedroom

bee

beech

beef

beer

beet

beetroot

behave

beige

be ill

bell

bellhop

belt

beltway

bench

benefits

be on a diet

berry

be sick

bicycle

big

bike

bike lane

bike path

bikini

bill

billfold

bin

binder

biodegradable

birch

bird

bird feeder

Biro

birth

birthday

biscuit

bite

black

black-and-white

Blackberry

blackboard

blade

blanket

bleed

bleeding

blender

blind

blinds

blog

blonde

blood

blossom

blouse

blow

blow your nose

blue

blue-collar

blunt

blush

board

boarding card

boarding pass

boat

body

boil

boiled

bold

Bollywood

bolt

bone

bonnet

bonus

book

bookcase

bookshop

bookstore

boom

boot

boots

boot up a computer

border

bored

borrow

boss

botany

bottle

bottle bank

bottle opener

bottom

boutique

bowl

boxing

boxing ring

box lunch

box office

boy

boyfriend

bra

bracelet

brain

brake

branch

brand

brass

bravo!

brazil nut

bread

breadwinner

break

break down

breakdown

break even

breakfast

break out

break the law

break up

breast

breathe

brick

bride

bridge

briefcase

bright

bring something to the boil

broadband

broadcast

broccoli

broil

broiler

bronze

brother

brother-in-law

brown

browse

browser

bruise

brush

bucket

bud

budget

buffet

bug

build

builder

building

bull

bulldozer

bulletin board

bully

bumper

bureau de change

burglar

burglarize

burglary

burgle

burn

bury

bus

bush

business

business card

business class

business hours

businessman

businesswoman

bus station

bus stop

busy

butcher's

butter

buttercup

butterfly

button

buy

buzz

C

cabbage

cabin

cabin crew

cable television

café 119,

cafeteria

cage

cake

cake tin

calculate

calculator

calendar

calf

call

call center

call someone back

calm

calm down

camel

camera

campus

canal

cancel

cancer

candy

candy store

canned

canoe

can opener

canteen

canvas

cap

capital

capitalism

capitalist

capitals

captain

car

caravan

carbonated

carbon dioxide

carbon monoxide

cardboard

cardigan

career

carer

caretaker

cargo

cargo hold

car hire

car park

carpenter

carpet

car rental

carrier bag

carrot

carry

carry-on luggage

cartoon

carve

cash

cashew nut

cashier

cash machine

cast

caste

castle

casual

cat

catalog

catch

catch a cold

catering

caterpillar

cathedral

cauliflower

cave

CD

CD-ROM

ceasefire

ceiling

celebrate

celebrity

celery

cell

cellar

cello

cellphone

cement

cemetery

central heating

century

CEO

cereal

ceremony

chain

chair

chalkboard

chambermaid

champion

championship

change

change color

change colour

change gear

change purse

channel

chapter

character

charge

chart

chat

chat show

cheap

cheat

check

checkbook

checked

checked luggage

checkered

check in

check-in

checking account

checkout

check something in

cheek

cheerful

cheese

chef

chemical

chemist

chemistry

chemist's

cheque

cherry

chest

chestnut

chest of drawers

chicken

chickenpox

child

chimney

chin

china

chips

chocolate

choir

chop

chopped

chopping board

chopsticks

chord

chore

chorus

christening

Christian name

Christmas

Christmas Day

Christmas Eve

church

cider

cinema

circle

circuit

circular

circumference

circus

citizen

city

civilian

civil war

clap

clarinet

class

classic

classical

classical music

classroom

claw

clay

clean

cleaner

clerk

click

client

cliff

climate

climate change

climb

clip

clock

close

closed

clothes

clothing

clothing industry

clothing store

cloud

cloudy

clutch

coach

coal

coast

coastal

coat

cockroach

coconut

cod

coffee

coffee maker

coin

cold

collage

collar

colleague

college

colon

column

comb

combine harvester

comedian

comedy

comic book

comma

commerce

commercial

commercial break

commit

communism

communist

community

commute

company

compartment

compass

competent

competition

complaint

complexion

compose

composer

compost

compound

computer

concert

conclusion

concrete

condom

conduct

conductor

cone

conference room

confess

confident

connection

conquer

conservation

conservatory

construction

consumer

contract

convict

cook

cooker

cookie

cool

copper

copy

corkscrew

corn

corporate

corporation

corpse

correct

correction fluid

cost

costs

costume

cot

cottage

cotton

cotton ball

cotton wool

cough

council

count

country

country music

countryside

couple

courgette

course

coursework

court

courthouse

cousin

cover

covering letter

cover letter

cow

co-worker

crab

crash

crawl

cream

credit

credit card

cremate

crib

cricket

crime

criminal

crisis

crisps

crocodile

crop

crossbar

crossroads

crosswalk

crouch

crowd

crowded

cruise

crutch

cry

crystal

cube

cucumber

cultivate

culture

cup

cupboard

cure

curious

curly

currency

currency exchange

current

current account

curry

cursor

curtain

cushion
custard
customer
customs
customs duty
cut
cut and paste
CV
cycle
cycle lane
cycle path
cycling
cyclist
cylinder

D

dad
daffodil
daily
daisy
damage
dance
dandelion
dark

darkness

darts

dashboard

data

database

date

daughter

daughter-in-law

dawn

day

day off

dead

deaf

deal

death

debit card

debt

decade

December

deciduous

decimal

decimal point

deck

decorate

decorator

deer

defend

degree

delay

delete

delicious

deliver

delivery

democracy

democratic

denim

dental floss

dentist

deodorant

depart

department

department store

departure

departures

deposit

depressed

design
designer
desk
desktop
dessert
destination
destroy
detached house
diagonal
dial
dialling code
diameter
diamond
diarrhoea
diary
dictator
dictionary
die
diesel
diet
difficult
digit
digital

digital camera

dilute

dining car

dining room

dinner

diploma

direct

direct debit

direct deposit

direction

directions

director

directory enquiries

dirty

disability

disabled

disaster

discount

discriminate

discrimination

discussion section

disgusting

dish

dishonest

dish soap

dishwasher

disk

disk drive

dismiss

dispose of something

dissatisfied

dissect

dissolve

distance

distance learning

district

ditch

dive

divide

division

divorce

divorced

DJ

dock

doctor

document

documentary

dog

do housework

domestic

donate

donkey

door

doorbell

doorstep

dorms

do the laundry

do the shopping

double room

download

downstairs

downtown

draft

drama

draw

drawer

draw the curtains

dress

dressing gown

dress up

drill

drink

drive

driver

driver's license

driveway

driving licence

drop someone off

drought

drown

drug

drug dealer

drum

drummer

dry

dubbed

duck

due

duet

dump

duration

during the week

dusk

dust

duster

duty-free

duvet

DVD

dyed

E

eagle

ear

earache

early

earn

earring

Earth

easel

east

Easter

easy

eat

e-book

eco-friendly

economic

economy

economy class

editor

education

eel

egg

eggplant

elastic

elbow

elect

election

electric

electric car

electrician

electricity

electronic

element

elementary school

elephant

elevator

elm

email

email address

embarrassed

embassy

emergency exit

emperor

empire

employ

employee

employer

employment

encore!

encyclopedia

endangered species

energy

engaged

engagement

engine

engineer

engineering

enjoy

enjoy yourself

enrol

en-suite bathroom

enthusiastic

entrance

envelope

envious

environmentally friendly

epic

equal

equality

ER

eraser

escalator

escape

essay

estate

estate agent

e-ticket

evaporate

even

evening

evergreen

every day

every week

evidence

evolution

evolve

exam

examination

excited

excitement

exclamation mark

exclamation point

executive

exercise

exhaust fumes

exhibition

exit

expand

expel

expenses

expensive

experiment

export

expression

extension

extinct

eye

eyebrow

eyelash

eyelid

F

fabric

face

face cream

face powder

facilities

factory

factory worker

faculty

fail

faint

fair

fairy tale

fall

fall out

false teeth

family

fan

fare

farm

farmer

farming

farmyard

fashion

fashionable

fast

fast food

fast-forward

fast train

fat

father

father-in-law

Father's Day

fault

fax

fax machine

fear

feather

feature

February

feed

feel

feel better

feeling

feelings

feel sick

fence

fender

fern

ferry

fertilizer

festival

festivities

feverish

fiancé

fiancée

fiction

field

fieldwork

fig

figure

file

filing cabinet

film

film industry

film producer

film star

final

finals

financial

fine

finger

fire

fire engine

fire escape

firefighter

fireplace

fire station

fireworks

firm

first aid kit

first class

first-class

first name

fir tree

fish

fisherman

fishing

fishmonger's

fist

fit

fix

fizzy

flannel

flashlight

flat

flat tire

flat tire repair kit

flat tyre

flavor

flavour

flesh

flexitime

flight

flight attendant

flight number

float

flood

floor

florist's

flour

flower

flu

flute

fly

fog

folder

fold your arms

folk music

following

font

food

food processor

foot

football

force

foreground

forehead

foreign

forest

forestry

forge

forget-me-not

fork

form

formal

format

formula

fortnight

foster

foul

fox

foyer

fraction

frame

fraud

freckles

freelance

freelancer

free time

freeze

freezer

freezing

freight train

fresh

Friday

fridge

fried

friend

friendly

fries

frightened

fringe

frog

front door

front light

frost

frozen

fruit

frustrated

fry

frying pan

fuel

full house

full stop

full-time

fumes

funeral

funny

fur

furious

furnished

furniture

fuse

future

G

gale

gallop

game

game show

gang

garage

garbage can

garden

garden bench

garden center

gardener

gardening

garlic

gas

gas pedal

gas station

gate

gear

gears

gear shift

gear stick

gel

gene

generous

genetics

geometry

germ

gesture

get better

get changed

get divorced

get dressed

get engaged

get married

get ready

get undressed

get up

gift

gift shop

giraffe

girl

girlfriend

give birth

give way

glad

glass

glasses

global

globalization

global warming

gloves

glue

goal

goat

go camping

go home

gold

golf

golf club

golf course

goods

goods train

goose

go out of business

go out with someone

go red
go shopping
go sightseeing
go to bed
go to sleep
go to work
govern
government
grade
graduate
graduation
grandchild
granddaughter
grandfather
grandma
grandmother
grandpa
grandparents
grandson
grant
grapefruit
grapes
graph

graphics

grass

grasshopper

grated

grateful

grater

grave

gravity

gravy

gray

graze

green

greengrocer's

greenhouse

greenhouse effect

greeting card

greetings card

grey

grill

grocery store

groom

ground

ground beef

grounds

grow

growl

grown-up

growth

grow up

guest

guest house

guided tour

guilt

guilty

guitar

guitarist

gun

gym

gymnasium

gymnastics

H

habit

habitat

hacker

hail

hair

hairdresser

hairdryer

hairspray

hairstyle

half

half an hour

halftime

hall

halls of residence

ham

hamburger

hammer

hand

handbag

handbrake

handkerchief

handle

handlebars

hand luggage

handsome

handwriting

hang up

Hanukkah

happiness

happy

harbor

harbour

hard

hard disk

hard drive

hardware

harm

harmful

harmony

harp

harvest

hat

have a temperature

have breakfast

have dinner

have lunch

have your hair cut

hay

hazelnut

head

headache

head light

headlights

headline

health

healthy

hear

heart

heart attack

heat

heater

heavy industry

hedge

hedgehog

heel

height

helicopter

helmet

helpful

hen

herb

hero

heroine

hexagon

hibernate

high heels

highlighter

high-speed

highway

hijack

hike

hill

hip

hippopotamus

hire

hiss

hit

hitch-hike

hob

hobby

hockey

hoe

hold

hold something up

hold the line

holiday

holly

Hollywood

home

homeless

home page

homework

homicide

honest

honesty

honey

honeymoon

honors degree

honours degree

hood

hoof

hop

horizon

hormone

horn

horror movie

horse

horseback riding

horse racing

horse-riding

hose

hospital

hospitality industry

host

hostage

hot

hot chocolate

hotel

hour

house

housewife

housework

housing

HR

hub

human resources

human rights

humid

hunger

hungry

hunt

hunter

hurricane

hurt

husband

hydro-electric power

hyphen

I

ice

ice cream

ice cube

ice rink

ice skating

icon

ID card

identity

ill

illegal

illness

illustration

immediately

immigrant

impatient

import

improve

in a cast

inbox

income

independence

independent

index

indicator

indoor

industrial

industrial sector

industrial waste

industry

information

information desk

inherit

inheritance

injection

injured

ink

ink cartridge

inner tube

innocent

in plaster

insect

insecure

in stock

insurance

insurance industry

intelligence

intelligent

intercity train

interest

intermission

international

international call

interval

interview

in the afternoon

in the evening

in the lead

in the morning

introduction

in tune

invade

invent

invention

invest

invigilate

invigilator

invitation

invite

iPod

iron

ironing board

island

IT

italics

itch

ivy

J

jacket

jail

jam

janitor

January

jasmine

jaw

jazz

jealous

jeans

jello

jelly

jellyfish

jet lag

jet ski

jeweler's

jeweller's

jewellery

jewelry

job

jogging

journal

journalist

journey

judge

judo

jug

juice

juicy

July

jumbo jet

jump

jumper

June

jury

K

kaftan

kangaroo

karaoke

karate

kayak

kennel

kettle

key

keyboard

key card

key ring

key something in

kick

kidnap

kidney

kimono

kind

kindness

king

kingdom

kitchen

kitten

knee

kneel

knickers

knife

L

laboratory

lace

ladder

ladle

ladybird

laid off

lake

lamb

lamp

lampshade

land

landfill

landing

landlady

landline

landlord

landscape

lane

language

laptop

lasagna

lasagne

last

last name

late

later

launch

Laundromat

laundry

laundry liquid

law

lawn

lawnmower

law school

lawyer

lay off

layoffs

layover

lead

leaf

leaflet

leafy

leap year

learn

leather

lecture

lecturer

leek

left

left-luggage office

leg

legal

legend

leisure industry

lemon

lemonade

lend

length

lens

Lent

lentils

lesson

let out

letter

letterbox

lettuce

librarian

library

license plate

lie

lie down

lifebelt

lifeboat

lifeguard

life preserver

lifestyle

lift

light

light bulb

lighthouse

light industry

lightning

lily

line

linen

lion

lips

lipstick

liquid

literature

litter

live

liver

living room

lizard

loaf

loan

lobster

local

local call

lock

locker

log in

logo

log off

lonely

long

look

look after someone

look like

look something up

lorry

lose

lose weight

lost

lost and found office

loudly

loving

low-budget

low-energy bulb

luggage

luggage label

luggage rack

luggage storage

luggage storage office

lunch

lunchbox

lunch break

lung

luxury

lyrics

M

machine

machinery

magazine

magnet

maiden name

mail

mailbox

mailman

mail order

mailwoman

main course

major

make

make a reservation

make dinner

make friends

make money

make up

makeup

mammal

manage

management

manager

mane

mango

man-made

manual

manufacture

manufacturer

manufacturing

map

marble

March

margarine

marine

mark

market

marketing

market research

marriage

married

marry

marsh

mash

mashed

mass production

master's degree

match

material

maternity leave

math

mathematical

mathematics

maths

matinee

mattress

mature

May

mayonnaise

meadow

meal

mean

measles

measure

measurement

meat

mechanic

medal

media

medical school

medicine

medium

medium-sized

meeting

melody

melon

melt

memory

memory stick

mend

menu

meow

message

metal

miaow

microphone

microscope

microwave

microwave oven

midday

midnight

mild

milk

mince

miner

mineral water

minibar

minimum wage

mining

minor

minus

minute

mirror

miserable

miss

mist

mistake

mixing bowl

mobile

mobile phone

modem

modern

mole

molecule

mom

moment

monarchy

Monday

money

monitor

monk

monkey

monsoon

month

monthly

monument

moo

mood

moor

morning

mortgage

mosque

mosquito

moth

mother

mother-in-law

Mother's Day

motorbike

motorcycle

motorway

mountain

mountain bike

mouse

mouse mat

mouse pad

moustache

mouth

mouthwash

move

move house

movie

movie star

movie theater

mow

MP

MP3 player

mud

mudguard

mug

multiplex cinema

multiplication

multiply

mum

murder

murderer

muscle

museum

mushroom

music

musical

musical instrument

musician

mustache

myth

N

nail

nail file

nail varnish

name

nanny

napkin

narrator

nation

national

nationality

natural

natural sciences

nature

naughty

navigate

navy

navy blue

neck

necklace

nectarine

needle

negative

negotiate

neigh

neighbor

neighbour

nephew

nervous

nest

net

network

news

newsagent's

newspaper

newsstand

New Year's Day

New Year's Eve

next

next door

nice

nickname

niece

night

nightdress

nod

nonfiction

non-smoking

noodles

noon

north

nose

note

notepad

notice

noticeboard

novel

novelist

November

now

nowadays

nuclear

nuclear power

nuclear waste

number

number plate

numeral

nun

nurse

nut

nylon

O

oak

oar

oblong

oboe

occasion

occupation

ocean

octave

October

octopus

odd

off

off by heart

office

offline

off sick

oil

oil drilling

oil paint

oil painting

ointment

old

old-age

old-fashioned

olive

omelet

omelette

on board

once

on-demand

one-way

one-way street

onion

online

online store

only child

on sale

on the air

on time

on weekends

open

opera

operating system

operation

operator

opponent

optician

optimistic

orange

orchard

orchestra

orchid

order

organ

organic

organism

organize

ornament

orphan

Oscar

ostrich

outdoor

out of stock

out of tune

output

out sick

outskirts

oven

overcrowded

overgrown

overhead projector

overtake

overtime

overweight

owe

owl

own

owner

oxygen

oyster

ozone layer

P

package

packed lunch

paddle

padlock

page

pain

painful

paint

paintbrush

painter

painting

pajamas

pale

palm tree

pan

pancake

panda

panties

pants

pantyhose

paper

paperback

paperclip

parachute

paragraph

parallel

parcel

parents

park

parking lot

parking meter

parking space

parliament

parrot

parsley

part

part-time

party

pass

passenger

pass out

Passover

passport

password

past

pasta

pastry

pâté

paternity leave

path

patient

patio

patriotic

pattern

pavement

paw

pay

payment

pay something in

pay up

PC

PE

peace

peaceful

peach

peanut

pear

peas

pebble

pedal

pedestrian

pedestrian crossing

peel

peeler

pen

pencil

penguin

pension

pentagon

pepper

percent

percentage

perform

performance

perfume

perimeter

period

permanent

personality

pessimistic

pet

petal

petrol

petrol station

pharmacy

PhD

phone

phone number

photocopier

photocopy

photograph

photographer

photography

physics

pianist

piano

pick

pick someone up

picnic

picture

pie

piece of music

pie chart

pig

pill

pillow

pilot

pimple

PIN

pine

pineapple

pink

pip

pit

pitch

pizza

places of interest

plagiarism

plane

plane crash

planet

plant

plaster

plastic

plate

platform

play

player

playground

playwright

pleased

pliers

plot

plough

plug

plug something in

plum

plumber

plus

poached

pocket

pocket money

poem

poet

poetry
point
poison
police
police officer
police station
polite
politics
pollute
pollution
pond
pony
poor
pop music
poppy
population
porch
pork
port
portable
porter
portrait
positive

post

postage

post box

postcard

postcode

poster

postman

post office

postwoman

pot

potato

pottery

poverty

power

PR

practice

practise

pregnancy

pregnant

prepare

preschool

prescription

present

preserve

president

pretty

price

pride

priest

primary color

primary colour

primary school

prime minister

prime time

primrose

principal

print

printer

printout

prison

prisoner

private

private school

private sector

processing

procession

proctor
produce
product
production
production line
profession
professional
professor
profit
profitable
program
programmer
promote
promotion
proof
propeller
property
prospectus
protect
proud
prove
provide
prune

public

public holiday

publicity

public school

public sector

publish

publisher

puddle

pulse

pump

pumpkin

pump up a tire

pump up a tyre

punctuation

puncture

puncture repair kit

punish

pupil

puppy

purple

purr

purse

put on weight

put something on

put things away

put up your hand

pyjamas

pyramid

Q

quack

quality

quarry

quarter

quarter of an hour

quay

queen

question mark

queue

quiz show

quotation

quotation marks

R

rabbi

rabbit

race

racetrack

racket

radar

radiator

radio

radius

railroad

railroad crossing

railway

rain

rain boots

rainbow

raindrop

rainforest

rainy

raisin

rake

Ramadan

rap

rape

rare

raspberry

rat

rate

rate of pay

ratio

raw

raw materials

razor

read

reading list

reality TV

realtor

rear-view mirror

receipt

receiver

reception

receptionist

recess

recipe

record

recorder

recruit

recruitment

rectangle

rectangular

recycle

recycling

red

reduced

redundancy

redundant

referee

reference

reflector

refugee

refund

register

registration number

regret

reign

relative

relaxed

relief

relieved

remote control

renewable energy

rent

repeat

reply

report

republic

research

research and development

reservation

residence hall

residential

resign

rest

restaurant

restroom

result

résumé

retail

retailing

retire

retirement

return

review

revise

revolution

reward

rewind

rhinoceros

rhubarb

rhyme

rhythm

rib

rice

rich

ride

right

right angle

ring

ring road

ringtone

ripe

rise

river

road

road sign

roam

roar

roast

rob

robbery

rock

rock and roll

roll

rolling pin

romance

rom-com

roof

roof rack

room

room number

room service

root

rope

rose

rough

roundabout

round trip

routine

row

row house

rubber

rubbish

rude

rug

rugby

ruins

ruler

run

runway

rural

rush hour

rusty

S

sad

saddle

safe

sail

sailing

sailor

salad

salary

sale

sales

sales clerk

salesman

sales representative

sales tax

saleswoman

salmon

salt

salty

sand

sandals

sandwich

sandy

sari

satellite

satin

satisfied

Saturday

sauce

saucepan

saucer

sausage

save

savings

savings account

savings and loan

savory

savoury

saw

saxophone

scaffolding

scale

scales

scan

scar

scarecrow

scared

scarf

scene

scenery

schedule

scholarship

school

schoolchildren

school rules

school uniform

science

science fiction

scientific

scientist

scissors

score

Scotch tape

scrambled

scratch

screen

screw

screwdriver

script

scroll

sculptor

sculpture

sea

seafood

seagull

seal

search

seasick

seaside

season

seasonal work

season ticket

seat

seat belt

seaweed

second

secondary school

second-class

secondhand

secretary

security

see

seed

selfish

sell

sellotape

semester

semicircle

semicolon

semi-detached house

seminar

send

senior

sensitive

sentence

separated

September

sequel

series

serious

serve

service

service sector

service station

set

set your alarm

sewage

S&H

shade

shady

shake hands with someone

shake your head

shampoo

shape

share

shareholder

shark

sharp

shave

shed

sheet

shelf

shell

shellfish

shin

shine

shiny

ship

shipping

shirt

shocked

shoelaces

shoes

shoe store

shoot

shop

shop assistant

shoplifter

shopping

shopping bag

shopping cart

shopping center

shopping list

shopping trolley

shore

short

shorts

shoulder

shovel

show

shower

shrub

shrug

shutters

shy

sick

sick leave

side-view mirror

sidewalk

sieve

sign

signal

signature

silk

silver

SIM card

sing

singer

single

single man

single parent

single room

single woman

sink

sister

sister-in-law

sit

sitar

sitcom

sit down

sitting room

size

skeleton

sketch

ski

skid

skiing

skim

skin

skinny

skirt

skis

sky

slave

sleeper

sleep in

sleeping car

sleeve

slice

slim

sling

slippers

slither

slow down

slow train

small

smart

smart board

smell

smile

smoking

smooth

snack

snail

snake

sneakers

sneeze

snooker

snort

snout

snow

snowflake

soap

soap opera

soccer

social

socialist

social networking

social sciences

social worker

socket

socks

sofa

soft

soft drink

softly

software

soil

solar panel

solar power

soldier

sold out

solid

solo

solution

solve

son

song

son-in-law

soon

sore

sore throat

soundtrack

soup

sour

south

spacecraft

spade

spaghetti

spam

spanner

spare part

spare room

spatula

special education

special offer

species

specimen

spectator

speed

speedboat

speed camera

speed limit

speedometer

speed up

spell

spend

sphere

spider

spinach

spine

spite

splinter

split up

spoke

sponge

spoon

spoonful

sport

spot

spotlight

spotted

spreadsheet

spring

sprinkler

spy

square

square root

squash

squid

squirrel

stable

stadium

staff

stag

stage

stairs

stale

stalk

stamp

stand

stand up

stapler

staples

star

starter

start up

state

statement

state school

station

station

stationer's

statue

stay

steak

steal

steamed

steam engine

steel

steer

stem

step

stepbrother

stepdaughter

stepfather

stepladder

stepmother

stepsister

stepson

stereo

stew

stick

still life

sting

stir

stocks and shares

stomach

stomachache

stone

stool

stop

stopover

store

storey

storm

stormy

story

stove

stove top

straight

straight ahead

straw

strawberry

stray

stream

street

stress

stretch

strike

string

striped

student

student

 accommodation

student loan

student union

study

stupid

stupidity

subcontract

subject

submarine

subtitled

subtitles

subtract

subtraction

suburb

suburban

subway

suffer

sugar

suit

suitcase

sum

summary

summer

sun

sunburn

Sunday

sunflower

sunny

sunrise

suncream

sunscreen

sunset

sunshine

supermarket

supervisor

supplier

supply

surf

surfboard

surgeon

surgery

surname

surprise

surprised

surveyor

suspect

suspicious

sustainable

swallow

swan

sweater

sweaty

sweep

sweet

sweetcorn

sweets

swim

swimmer

swimming

swimming pool

swimming trunks

swimsuit

switch

switch something off

switch something on

syllabus

synagogue

synthetic

T

TA

table

tablecloth

table of contents

tablet

tadpole

tail

tail light

take a bath

take a shower

take off

take-off

take someone's

temperature

take something away

take something off

talk show

tall

tambourine

tame

tap

tape measure

tap water

taste

tax

taxi

taxi rank

taxi stand

tea

teach

teacher

team

teapot

tears

teaspoon

tea towel

technical college

technician

teenager

telephone

television

temp

temperature

temping agency

temporary

tenant

tend

tennis

term

terminal

terraced house

territory

terrorism

terrorist

test

test tube

text

textbook

textile

textile industry

text message

Thanksgiving

thaw

theater

the dentist's

the doctor's

the environment

theft

the internet

the middle class

the movies

theory

thermometer

thesaurus

thesis

the tube

the underground

the unemployed

the upper class

the web

the working class

the World Cup

thief

thigh

thin

thirst

thirsty

thorn

thoughtful

thoughtless

thread

three-/four-/five- etc. star

thrifty

thriller

thriving

throat

throw

throw something in the bin

throw something in the garbage

thumb

thunder

thunderstorm

Thursday

ticket

ticket collector

ticket office

tide

tidy things away

tidy up

tie

tiger

tight

tights

till

timber

time

time off

timer

times

timetable

tin

tinned

tin opener

tip

tire

tired

tissue

title

toad

toast

toaster

today

toe

toilet

toilet paper

toiletries

tomato

tomorrow

toner

tongs

tongue

tool

toolbox

tooth

toothbrush

toothpaste

top

torch

tornado

tortoise

touch

tour

tourism

tourist

tourist information

office

tournament

tow

towel

tower

town

toy

toy store

track

tractor

trade

trade union

traffic

traffic circle

traffic jam

traffic lights

traffic warden

tragedy

trailer

train

trainers

training

train station

translate

translation

transparent

transport

transportation

trap

trash

trash can

travel

travel agency

traveler

traveller

tray

tray table

treat

tree

trendy

trial

triangle

triangular

trip

triplets

trolley

tropical

trot

trousers

truck

trumpet

trunk

try something on

T-shirt

tsunami

Tuesday

tuition fees

tulip

tumble-dryer

tune

tune in

turban

turkey

turn

turnip

turnover

turn signal

turn something off

turn something on

turquoise

tusk

tutor

tutorial

TV

twice

twins

twist

type

tyre

U

ugly

umbrella

umpire

uncle

uncomfortable

unconscious

undergraduate

underpants

underwear

unemployed

unemployment

unhappy

uniform

unit

university

unleaded gas

unleaded petrol

upset

upstairs

urban

USB

username

use something up

V

vacation

vacuum

vacuum cleaner

Valentine's Day

valley

valuable

valve

van

vandal

vandalize

varnish

vase

vegetable

vegetarian

vehicle

vein

velvet

vending machine

verse

vest

vet

victim

video

view

village

vinegar

violent

violet

violin

virus

viva

vocabulary

vocational course

voice

voicemail

volleyball

volt

volume

voluntary

volunteer

vomit

vote

voyage

W

wag

wages

waist

waistcoat

waiter

waiting room

waitress

wake

wake up

wake-up call

walk

wall

wallet

wallpaper

walnut

war

wardrobe

washcloth

washing machine

washing-up liquid

wasp

watch

water

watercolor

watercolour

waterfall

watering can

watt

wave

wave at someone

wavelength

wax

wealthy

wear

weather

weather forecast

web

web address

webcam

website

wedding

wedding anniversary

Wednesday

weed

weedkiller

week

weekday

weekend

weekly

weeping willow

weigh

weight

well

well-behaved

well done

wellingtons

west

whale

wheel

wheelbarrow

wheelchair

whisk

whisky

whistle

white

whiteboard

white-collar

widow

widower

width

wife

wild

wildlife

will

win

wind

windmill

window

window box

window shopping

wind power

windscreen

windshield

windsurfing

windy

wine

wine list

wing

wing mirror

winner

winter

wire

wireless

wish

withdraw

witness

wolf

wood

wooden

woods

wool

woolen

word

work

working week

workshop

work something out

world

worm

worried

wound

wounded

wrapping paper

wrench

wrinkles

wrist

write

writer

writing

writing paper

X

X-ray

xylophone

Y

yacht

yard

year

yellow

yesterday

yew

yield

yoghurt

yogurt

young

youth hostel

Z

zebra

zebra crossing

zip

zip code

zipper

zone

zoo

zucchini

HarperCollins Publishers

Westerhill Road

Bishopbriggs

Glasgow

G64 2QT

First edition 2012

© HarperCollins Publishers 2012

EPUB Edition © January 2012 ISBN 978-0-00-747912-2

Collins ® is a registered trademark of
HarperCollins Publishers Limited

www.collinslanguage.com

A catalogue record for this book is
available from the British Library

All rights reserved under International and Pan-American Copyright Conventions. By payment of the required fees, you have been granted the non-exclusive, non-transferable right to access and read the text of this e-book on screen. No part of this text may be reproduced, transmitted, downloaded, decompiled, reverse engineered, or stored in or introduced into any information storage and retrieval system, in any form or by any means, whether electronic or mechanical, now known or hereinafter invented, without the express written permission of HarperCollins.

Entered words that we have reason to believe constitute trademarks have been designated as such. However, neither the presence nor absence of such designation should be regarded as affecting the legal status of any trademark.

HarperCollins does not warrant that www.collinsdictionary.com, www.collinslanguage.com or any other website mentioned in this title will be provided uninterrupted, that any website will be error free, that defects will be corrected, or that the website or the server

that makes it available are free of viruses or bugs. For full terms and conditions please refer to the site terms provided on the website.

Editorial staff

Senior editors:

Penny Hands

Kate Wild

Project management:

Lisa Sutherland

Contributors:

Sandra Anderson

Katharine Coates

Jennifer Craig

Kate Mohideen

Jane Solomon

Elsbeth Summers

For the publisher:

Lucy Cooper

Kerry Ferguson

Elaine Higgleton